# MA2205: Basic Algebra An Introduction to Group Theory

#### Dr. Arjun Paul

Assistant Professor
Department of Mathematics and Statistics
Indian Institute of Science Education and Research Kolkata,
Mohanpur - 741 246, Nadia,
West Bengal, India.

Email: arjun.paul@iiserkol.ac.in. Homepage: https://sites.google.com/site/arjunpaultifr/

Version: December 9, 2024 at 12:06 Noon (IST). Available at: https://arjunpaul29.github.io/home/notes/Basic\_Algebra.pdf

To my students . . .

## **Contents**

Li	st of	Symbols	vii
1	Intr	oduction to Groups	1
	1.1	Group	1
	1.2	Subgroup	10
	1.3	Cyclic group	14
	1.4	Product of subgroups	17
	1.5	Lattice of subgroups	18
2	Peri	mutation Groups	21
	2.1	Definition and examples	21
	2.2	Cycles	22
	2.3	Even and odd permutations	26
	2.4	Alternating subgroup $A_n$	28
3	Gro	up Homomorphism	31
	3.1	Definition and examples	31
	3.2	Basic properties	32
	3.3	Kernel	35
4	Quo	otient Groups	37
	4.1	What is a quotient group?	37
	4.2	Left and right cosets	38
	4.3	Normal Subgroups	41
	4.4	Construction of quotient groups	42
5	Isor	norphism Theorems	45
	5.1	First isomorphism theorem	45
	5.2	Abelianization	47
	5.3	Inner Automorphisms	49
	5.4	Second isomorphism theorem	49
	5.5	Third isomorphism theorem	50

6	Pro	duct and Coproduct of Groups	53
	6.1	Direct product of groups	53
	6.2	Direct sum (Coproduct) of abelian groups	57
7	Gro	up Action	61
	7.1	Definition and examples	61
	7.2	Orbits and isotropy subgroups	64
	7.3	Class equation for conjugacy action	68
	7.4	<i>p</i> -groups	71
	7.5	Simple Groups	73
8	Mis	cellaneous Exercises	77

## **List of Symbols**

Ø	Empty set
$\mathbb{Z}$	The set of all integers
$\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$	The set of all non-negative integers
$\mathbb{N}$	The set of all natural numbers (i.e., positive integers)
Q	The set of all rational numbers
$\mathbb{R}$	The set of all real numbers
	The set of all complex numbers
<	Less than
<	Less than or equal to
>	Greater than
$\mathbb{C} < \leq 1 > 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 <$	Greater than or equal to
_	Proper subset
$\subset$	Subset or equal to
Ç	Subset but not equal to (c.f. proper subset)
Ē	There exists
∄	Does not exists
$\forall$	For all
$\in$	Belongs to
∉	Does not belong to
$\sum$	Sum
Π	Product
	Plus and minus
$\infty_{\underline{}}$	Infinity
$\sqrt{a}$	Square root of <i>a</i>
U	Union
	Disjoint union
$\cap$	Intersection
$A \to B$	A mapping into $B$
$a \mapsto b$	a maps to b
$\hookrightarrow$	Inclusion map
$A \setminus B$	A setminus B
≅ 4 .	Isomorphic to
$A := \dots$	A is defined to be
	End of a proof

Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
$\alpha$	alpha	β	beta
$\gamma$	gamma	δ	delta
$\pi$	pi	$\phi$	phi
$\varphi$	var-phi	$\psi$	psi
$\epsilon$	epsilon	$\varepsilon$	var-epsilon
$\zeta \\ \theta$	zeta	$\eta$	eta
$\theta$	theta	$\iota$	iota
$\kappa$	kappa	$\lambda$	lambda
$\mu$	mu	$\nu$	nu
v	upsilon	ho	rho
$\varrho$	var-rho	$ ho \ \xi \  au$	xi
$\sigma$	sigma	au	tau
$\chi$	chi	$\omega$	omega
Ω	Capital omega	Γ	Capital gamma
Θ	Capital theta	$\Delta$	Capital delta
Λ	Capital lambda	Ξ	Capital xi
$\Sigma$	Capital sigma	П	Capital pi
Φ	Capital phi	$\Psi$	Capital psi

Some of the useful Greek alphabets

#### Chapter 1

## **Introduction to Groups**

#### 1.1 Group

Let A be a non-empty set. A binary operation on A is a map  $*: A \times A \to A$ ; for given  $(a,b) \in A \times A$  its image under the map \* is denoted by a\*b. We consider some well-known examples of non-empty set together with a natural binary operation and study list down their basic properties.

Example 1.1.1. The set of all integers

$$\mathbb{Z} = \{0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \pm 4, \pm 5, \ldots\}$$

admits a binary operation, namely the addition of integers:

$$+: \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}, \quad (a, b) \longmapsto a + b.$$

This binary operation has the following basic properties:

- (i) Associativity:  $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c, \forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,
- (ii) Existence of a neutral element: There is a special element  $0 \in \mathbb{Z}$  that satisfies

$$a+0=a=0+a, \forall a \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

(iii) Existence of additive inverse: For given  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ , there exists an element  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$  (depending on a) such that a + b = 0 = b + a; generally, we denote this element b by -a.

**Example 1.1.2.** A *symmetry* on a non-empty set X is a bijective map from X onto itself. The set of all symmetries of X is denoted by S(X). Note that S(X) admits a binary operation given by composition of maps:

$$\circ: S(X) \times S(X) \longrightarrow S(X), \ (f,g) \longmapsto g \circ f.$$

Note that

- (i) given any  $f, g, h \in S(X)$ , we have  $(f \circ g) \circ h = f \circ (g \circ h)$ .
- (ii) there is a distinguished element, the identity map  $\mathrm{Id}_X \in S(X)$  such that  $f \circ \mathrm{Id}_X = f = \mathrm{Id}_X \circ f$ , for all  $f \in S(X)$ .
- (iii) given any  $f \in S(X)$ , there is a element  $g := f^{-1} \in S(X)$  such that  $f \circ g = \operatorname{Id}_X = g \circ f$ .

**Example 1.1.3.** Fix a natural number  $n \ge 1$ , and consider the set  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  of all invertible  $n \times n$  matrices with entries from  $\mathbb{R}$ . Note that  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  admits a natural binary operation given by

matrix multiplication:

$$: \operatorname{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) \times \operatorname{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) \to \operatorname{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}), (A, B) \longmapsto AB.$$

Note that

- (i) given any  $A, B, C \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ , we have (AB)C = A(BC).
- (ii) there is a distinguished element, the identity matrix  $I_n \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $AI_n = I_nA = A$ , for all  $A \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ .
- (iii) given any  $A \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ , there is a element  $B := A^{-1} \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $AB = BA = I_n$ .

A non-empty set together with a binary operation satisfying the three properties listed in the above examples is a mathematical model for many important mathematical and physical systems; such a mathematical model is called a group. Here is a formal definition.

**Definition 1.1.4.** A *group* is a pair (G, \*) consisting of a non-empty set G together with a binary operation

$$*: G \times G \longrightarrow G, \quad (a,b) \longmapsto a * b,$$

satisfying the following conditions:

- (G1) Associativity: a \* (b \* c) = (a \* b) \* c, for all  $a, b, c \in G$ .
- (G2) Existence of neutral element:  $\exists$  an element  $e \in G$  such that  $a * e = e * a = a, \forall a \in G$ .
- (G3) *Existence of inverse*: for each  $a \in G$ , there exists an element  $b \in G$ , depending on a, such that a \* b = e = b \* a.

**Remark 1.1.5.** A *semigroup* is a pair (G,\*) consisting of a non-empty set G together with an associative binary operation  $*: G \times G \to G$  (i.e., the condition (G1) holds). A *monoid* is a semigroup (G,\*) satisfying the condition (G2) as above. For example,  $(\mathbb{N},+)$  is a semigroup but not a monoid, and  $(\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0},+)$  is a monoid but not a group. However, we shall not deal with these two notations in this text.

**Example 1.1.6.** (i) *The trivial group:* A singleton set  $\{e\}$  with the binary operation e \* e := e is a group; such a group is called a *trivial group*.

- (ii) *The group with two elements:* The set  $G := \{e, a\}$ , with the binary operation \* given by a \* e = e \* a = a and a \* a = e, is a group with two elements.
- (iii) The group with three elements: The set  $G := \{e, a, b\}$  together with the binary operation \* given by the following table of binary operation, is a group with three elements.

*	e	a	b
e	e	a	b
a	a	b	e
b	b	e	a

TABLE 1.1.6.1: A group with 3 elements

**Notation 1.1.7.** For a group consisting of small number of elements, it is convenient to write down the associated binary operation explicitly using a table as above, known as the Cayley table.

(iv) *Klein's four-group:* Consider the set  $K_4 = \{e, a, b, c\}$  together with the binary operation

$$*: K_4 \times K_4 \longrightarrow K_4$$

defined by the Cayley table 1.1.7.1 below. Verify that  $K_4$  is a group.

1.1. Group 3

*	e	a	b	c
e	e	a	b	c
a	a	e	c	b
b	b	c	e	a
c	c	b	a	e

TABLE 1.1.7.1: Klein four group

**Example 1.1.8.** (i) The sets  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}$ ,  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $\mathbb{C}$  form groups with respect to the usual addition.

- (ii) The set  $\mathbb{Q}^* = \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{0\}$  forms a group with respect to the usual multiplication.
- (iii) The set  $\mathbb{C}^* := \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$  of non-zero complex numbers forms a group with respect to multiplication of complex numbers.
- (iv) Circle group: The set

$$S^1 := \{ z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| = 1 \}$$

forms a group with respect to multiplication of complex numbers.

**Example 1.1.9.** Define a binary operation on  $\mathbb{R}^2 = \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$  by *component-wise addition:* 

$$(x_1, y_1) + (x_2, y_2) := (x_1 + x_2, y_1 + y_2), \ \forall (x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

Since the usual addition operation on  $\mathbb{R}$  is associative, the above binary operation on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  is associative. Indeed, for given  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), (x_3, y_3) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , we have

$$((x_1, y_1) + (x_2, y_2)) + (x_3, y_3) = (x_1 + x_2, y_1 + y_2) + (x_3, y_3)$$

$$= ((x_1 + x_2) + x_3, (y_1 + y_2) + y_3)$$

$$= (x_1 + (x_2 + x_3), y_1 + (y_2 + y_3))$$

$$= (x_1, y_1) + (x_2 + x_3, y_2 + y_3)$$

$$= (x_1, y_1) + ((x_2, y_2) + (x_3, y_3)).$$

The element  $(0,0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  plays the role of the neutral element; indeed, for all  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  we have

$$(x,y)+(0,0)=(x+0,y+0)=(x,y)$$
 and 
$$(0,0)+(x,y)=(0+x,0+y)=(x,y).$$

For given  $(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , the element  $(-x,-y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  satisfies

$$(x,y)+(-x,-y)=(x+(-x),y+(-y))=(0,0)$$
 and 
$$(-x,-y)+(x,y)=((-x)+x,(-y)+y)=(0,0).$$

Thus  $(\mathbb{R}^2, +)$  is a group. Similarly, for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , show that the component-wise addition of real numbers:

$$(a_1, \ldots, a_n) + (b_1, \ldots, b_n) := (a_1 + b_1, \ldots, a_n + b_n), \ \forall \ a_i, b_i \in \mathbb{R},$$

defines a binary operation + on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  which makes the pair  $(\mathbb{R}^n, +)$  a group.

**Notation 1.1.10.** Let (G, \*) be a group. We say that G is finite or infinite according as its underlying set G is finite or infinite; the cardinality of G is called the order of the group (G, \*), and we denote it by the symbol |G|. For notational simplicity, we write ab to mean a \* b, for all  $a, b \in G$ ; and for any integer  $n \ge 1$ , we denote by  $a^n$  the n-fold product of a with itself, i.e.,

$$a^n := \underbrace{a * \cdots * a}_{n ext{-fold product of }a}$$
 .

For a negative integer n, we define  $a^n := (a^{-1})^{-n}$ . When there is no confusion likely to arise, we simply denote a group (G, \*) by G without specifying the binary operation.

#### **Exercise 1.1.11.** Let G be a group.

- (i) Show that  $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a$ , for all  $a \in G$ .
- (ii) Show that  $(ab)^{-1} = b^{-1}a^{-1}$ , for all  $a, b \in G$ .
- (iii) Show that  $a^m a^n = a^{m+n}$ , for all  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $a \in G$ .
- (iv) Show that  $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$ , for all  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $a \in G$ .
- (v) Let  $a, b \in G$  be such that ab = ba. Show that  $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

#### **Definition 1.1.12.** A map $f: A \rightarrow B$ is said to be

- (i) injective if given any  $a_1, a_2 \in A$  with  $f(a_1) = f(a_2)$ , we have  $a_1 = a_2$ ,
- (ii) *surjective* if given any  $b \in B$ , there is an element  $a \in A$  such that f(a) = b,
- (iii) *bijective* if f is both injective and surjective.

**Exercise 1.1.13.** Let A, B and C be three sets. Given maps  $f: A \to B$  and  $g: B \to C$ , we define the *composition of g with f*, also called "g *composed f*", to be the map  $g \circ f: A \to C$  defined by

$$(g \circ f)(a) = g(f(a)), \ \forall \ a \in A.$$

Prove the following.

- (i) If both f and g are injective, so is  $g \circ f : A \to C$ .
- (ii) If both f and g are surjective, so is  $g \circ f : A \to C$ .
- (iii) If  $g \circ f$  is injective, show that f is injective.
- (iv) Give an example to show that  $g \circ f$  could be injective without g being injective.
- (v) If  $g \circ f$  is surjective, show that g is surjective.
- (vi) Give an example to show that  $g \circ f$  could be surjective without f being surjective.
- (vii) Given any set A, there is a map  $\mathrm{Id}_A:A\to A$  defined by  $\mathrm{Id}_A(a)=a$ ,  $\forall~a\in A$ , known as the *identity map* of A. Verify that  $\mathrm{Id}_A$  is bijective.
- (viii) If  $f:A\to B$  is bijective, show that there is a bijective map  $\widetilde{f}:B\to A$  such that  $\widetilde{f}\circ f=\mathrm{Id}_A$  and  $f\circ\widetilde{f}=\mathrm{Id}_B$ . The bijective map  $\widetilde{f}:B\to A$ , defined above, is called the *inverse of f*, and is usually denoted by  $f^{-1}$ .

**Definition 1.1.14.** A *permutation* on a set A is a bijective map  $\sigma: A \to A$ .

For a non-empty set A, we denote by  $S_A$  the set of all permutations on A. Let A be a non-empty set. Define a binary operation on  $S_A$  by

$$\circ: S_A \times S_A \longrightarrow S_A, (f,g) \longmapsto g \circ f.$$

Verify that  $(S_A, \circ)$  is a group. (*Hint*: Use Exercise 1.1.13).

1.1. Group 5

**Example 1.1.15** (Symmetric group  $S_3$ ). Consider an equilateral triangle  $\triangle$  in a plane with its vertices labelled as 1,2 and 3. Consider the symmetries of  $\triangle$  obtained by its rotations by angles  $2n\pi/3$ , for  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , around its centre, and reflections along a straight line passing through its top vertex and centre. Note that, we have only six possible symmetries of  $\triangle$  as follow:

$$\sigma_{0} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 1 \\
2 & \mapsto & 2 \\
3 & \mapsto & 3
\end{cases}, \quad \sigma_{1} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 2 \\
2 & \mapsto & 3 \\
3 & \mapsto & 1
\end{cases}, \quad \sigma_{2} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 3 \\
2 & \mapsto & 1 \\
3 & \mapsto & 2
\end{cases},$$

$$\sigma_{3} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 1 \\
2 & \mapsto & 3 \\
2 & \mapsto & 2
\end{cases}, \quad \sigma_{4} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 3 \\
2 & \mapsto & 2 \\
3 & \mapsto & 1
\end{cases},$$

$$\sigma_{5} = \begin{cases}
1 & \mapsto & 2 \\
2 & \mapsto & 1 \\
3 & \mapsto & 3
\end{cases}$$

Let  $S_3 := \{\sigma_0, \sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3, \sigma_4, \sigma_5\}$ . Note that, each of symmetries are bijective maps from the set  $J_3 := \{1, 2, 3\}$  onto itself, and any bijective map from  $J_3$  onto itself is one of the symmetries in  $S_3$ . Since composition of bijective maps is bijective (see Exercise 1.1.13), we get a binary operation

$$S_3 \times S_3 \longrightarrow S_3, \ (\sigma_i, \sigma_j) \longmapsto \sigma_i \circ \sigma_j.$$

**Exercise 1.1.16.** Write down the Cayley table for this binary operation on  $S_3$  defined by composition of maps, and show that  $S_3$  together with this binary operation is a group. Find  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in S_3$  such that  $\sigma_1 \circ \sigma_2 \neq \sigma_2 \circ \sigma_1$ .

**Definition 1.1.17.** The *order* of a group G is the cardinality of its underlying set G. We denote this by |G|. In particular, if G is a finite set, then |G| is the number of elements of the set G.

**Example 1.1.18.** Let  $S_4$  be the set of all bijective maps from  $J_4 := \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  onto itself. Given any two elements  $\sigma, \tau \in S_4$ , note that their composition  $\sigma \circ \tau \in S_4$ . Thus we have a binary operation on  $S_4$  given by sending  $(\sigma, \tau) \in S_4 \times S_4$  to  $\sigma \circ \tau \in S_4$ . Show that the set  $S_4$  together with this binary operation (composition of bijective maps) is a non-commutative group of order 4! = 24.

**Definition 1.1.19.** Let  $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . A map  $f: A \to \mathbb{R}$  is said to be *continuous* at  $a \in A$  if given any real number  $\epsilon > 0$ , there is a real number  $\delta > 0$  (depending on both  $\epsilon$  and a) such that for each  $x \in A$  satisfying  $|a - x| < \delta$ , we have  $|f(a) - f(x)| < \epsilon$ . If f is continuous at each point of A, we say that f is *continuous* on A.

**Exercise 1.1.20.** Let  $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ , and let  $C(A) := \{f : A \to \mathbb{R} \mid f \text{ is continuous}\}$ . Verify that C(A) is a group with respect to the binary operation defined for all  $f, g \in C(A)$  by the formula

$$(f+g)(x) := f(x) + g(x), \ \forall \ x \in A.$$

Solution. Let  $f_1, f_2 \in C(A)$ . Let  $a \in A$  be arbitrary but fixed after choice. Since both  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are continuous at a, given a real number  $\epsilon > 0$ , there exist real numbers  $\delta_1, \delta_2 > 0$  such that for each  $x \in A$  satisfying  $|a - x| < \delta_j$  we have  $|f_j(a) - f_j(x)| < \epsilon/2$ , for all j = 1, 2. Let  $\delta := \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2\}$ . Then  $\delta > 0$ , and for any  $x \in A$  satisfying  $|a - x| < \delta$ , we have  $|f_j(a) - f_j(x)| < \epsilon/2$ , for all j = 1, 2. Then we have,

$$|(f_1 + f_2)(a) - (f_1 + f_2)(x)| = |f_1(a) + f_2(a) - f_1(x) - f_2(x)|$$

$$= |(f_1(a) - f_1(x)) + (f_2(a) - f_2(x))|$$

$$\leq |f_1(a) - f_1(x)| + |f_2(a) - f_2(x)|$$

$$< \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon.$$

Therefore,  $f_1 + f_2$  is continuous at  $a \in A$ . Since  $a \in A$  is arbitrary,  $f_1 + f_2$  is continuous at every points of A, and hence  $f_1 + f_2 \in C(A)$ . Since for given  $f_1, f_2, f_3 \in C(A)$  and any  $x \in A$ , we

have

$$((f_1 + f_2) + f_3)(x) = (f_1 + f_2)(x) + f_3(x)$$

$$= (f_1(x) + f_2(x)) + f_3(x)$$

$$= f_1(x) + (f_2(x) + f_3(x))$$

$$= f_1(x) + (f_2 + f_3)(x)$$

$$= (f_1 + (f_2 + f_3))(x),$$

we have  $(f_1 + f_2) + f_3 = f_1 + (f_2 + f_3)$ . Note that, the constant function

$$0:A\to\mathbb{R}$$

defined by sending all points of A to  $0 \in \mathbb{R}$ , given by 0(a) = 0,  $\forall a \in A$ , is continuous (*Hint:* given  $\epsilon > 0$ , take any  $\delta > 0$ ), and satisfies f + 0 = f = 0 + f, for all  $f \in A$ . Given  $f \in C(A)$ , note that the function -f defined by (-f)(a) = -f(a), for all  $a \in A$ , is continuous on A (*Hint:* given  $\epsilon > 0$ , take the same  $\delta > 0$  which works for f), and satisfies f + (-f) = (-f) + f = 0. Therefore, (C(A), +) satisfies all axioms of a group, and hence is a group.

**Example 1.1.21** (Matrix groups). (i) Fix two integers  $m, n \geq 1$ , and let  $\mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  be the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices with entries from  $\mathbb{R}$ . Given  $A, B \in \mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ , we define their addition to be the matrix  $A + B \in \mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  whose (i, j)-th entry is given by  $a_{ij} + b_{ij}$ , where  $a_{ij}$  and  $b_{ij}$  are the (i, j)-th entries of A and B, respectively. Then we have a binary operation

$$+: \mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \times \mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{M}_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}), \ (A, B) \longmapsto A + B.$$

Clearly, the set  $M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  is non-empty, and the pair  $(M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}), +)$  satisfies the properties (G1)–(G3) in Definition 1.1.4.

(ii) *Matrix multiplication:* Fix positive integers m, n, p, and let  $A \in M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  and  $B \in M_{n \times p}(\mathbb{R})$ . Define the *product of A and B* to be the  $m \times p$  matrix  $AB \in M_{m \times p}(\mathbb{R})$ , whose (i, j)-th entry is

$$(1.1.22) c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1} a_{ik} b_{kj},$$

where  $a_{ik}$  is the (i, k)-th entry of A, and  $b_{kj}$  is the (k, j)-th entry of B.

Let  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ . A matrix  $B \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  is said to be the *left inverse* (resp., *right inverse*) of A if  $BA = I_n$  (resp.,  $AB = I_n$ ), where  $I_n \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  whose (i, j)-th entry is

$$\delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

**Exercise 1.1.23.** Show that the left inverse and the right inverse of  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ , when they exists, are the same. In other words, if  $AB = I_n$  and  $CA = I_n$ , for some  $B, C \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ , show that B = C.

A matrix  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  is said to be *invertible* if there is a matrix  $B \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $AB = BA = I_n$ .

General linear group: Let

$$\operatorname{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{ A \in \operatorname{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) : A \text{ is invertible} \}$$

be the set of all invertible  $n \times n$  matrices with real entries.

- (a) Show that  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a group with respect to matrix multiplication.
- (b) Give examples of  $A, B \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $A + B \notin GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

1.1. Group 7

- (c) Give an example of  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $AB \neq I_n$ ,  $\forall B \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ .
- (d) Assuming  $n \geq 2$  give examples of  $A, B \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $AB \neq BA$ .

The group  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  is called the *general linear group* (of degree n).

As we see in Example 1.1.21 that the relation ab = ba need not hold for all  $a, b \in G$ , in general. We shall see later that the symmetric group  $S_3$  in Example 1.1.8 (1.1.15) is the smallest such group; in this case, we have  $\sigma_3 \circ \sigma_1 = \sigma_4$  while  $\sigma_1 \circ \sigma_3 = \sigma_5$ .

**Definition 1.1.24.** A group G is said to be *commutative* (or, *abelian*) if ab = ba, for all  $a, b \in G$ . A group which is not commutative (or, abelian) is called a *non-commutative* (or, *non-abelian*) group.

**Exercise 1.1.25.** (i) Verify that  $\{e\}$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{C}^*$ ,  $S^1$ ,  $K_4$  are abelian groups.

(ii) Show that  $S_3$  and  $GL_2(\mathbb{R})$  are non-abelian groups.

**Exercise 1.1.26.** Show that  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  is not abelian, for all  $n \geq 2$ .

**Definition 1.1.27.** A *relation* on a non-empty set A is a non-empty subset  $\rho \subseteq A \times A$ . If  $(a, b) \in \rho$ , sometimes we may express it as  $a \rho b$ , and call a is  $\rho$ -related to b in A. A relation  $\rho$  on A is said to be

- (i) reflexive if  $(a, a) \in \rho$ ,  $\forall a \in A$ ;
- (ii) *symmetric* if  $(a, b) \in \rho$  implies  $(b, a) \in \rho$ ;
- (iii) anti-symmetric if  $(a, b) \in \rho$  and  $(b, a) \in \rho$  implies a = b;
- (iv) *transitive* if  $(a,b) \in \rho$  and  $(b,c) \in \rho$  implies  $(a,c) \in \rho$ ;
- (v) *equivalence* if  $\rho$  is reflexive, symmetric and transitive; and
- (vi) *partial order* if  $\rho$  is reflexive, anti-symmetric and transitive.

Let A be a non-empty set, and let  $\rho$  be an equivalence relation on A. The  $\rho$ -equivalence class of an element  $a \in A$  is the subset

$$[a]_{\rho} := \{b \in A : (b, a) \in \rho\} \subseteq A.$$

**Proposition 1.1.28.** With the above notations, given any  $a, b \in A$ ,  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$  if and only if  $(a, b) \in \rho$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $(a,b) \in \rho$ . Then for any  $c \in [a]_{\rho}$ , we have  $(c,a) \in \rho$ . Since  $\rho$  is transitive, from  $(c,a),(a,b) \in \rho$  we have  $(c,b) \in \rho$ , and so  $c \in [b]_{\rho}$ . Therefore,  $[a]_{\rho} \subseteq [b]_{\rho}$ . Since  $\rho$  is symmetric,  $(a,b) \in \rho$  implies  $(b,a) \in \rho$ . Then following above arguments, we conclude that  $[b] \subseteq [a]$ . Therefore,  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$ . Since  $\rho$  is reflexive,  $a \in [a]_{\rho}$ . Then  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$  implies that  $a \in [b]_{\rho}$ , and so  $(a,b) \in \rho$ . This completes the proof.

**Proposition 1.1.29.** With the above notations, given  $a, b \in A$ , either  $[a]_{\rho} \cap [b]_{\rho} = \emptyset$  or  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$ .

*Proof.* It is enough to show that if  $[a]_{\rho} \cap [b]_{\rho} \neq \emptyset$ , then  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$ . Let  $c \in [a]_{\rho} \cap [b]_{\rho}$ . Then  $(c,a),(c,b) \in \rho$ . Since  $\rho$  is symmetric,  $(c,a) \in \rho$  implies  $(a,c) \in \rho$ . Then  $(a,c) \in \rho$  and  $(c,b) \in \rho$  together implies  $(a,b) \in \rho$ , since  $\rho$  is transitive. Then by Proposition 1.1.28 we have  $[a]_{\rho} = [b]_{\rho}$ .

**Definition 1.1.30.** Let *A* be a non-empty set. A *partition* on *A* is a non-empty collection  $\mathcal{P} := \{A_{\alpha} : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$ , where

(i)  $A_{\alpha} \subseteq A$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ ,

(ii)  $A_{\alpha} \cap A_{\beta} = \emptyset$ , for  $\alpha \neq \beta$  in  $\Lambda$ , and

(iii) 
$$A = \bigcup_{\alpha \in \Lambda} A_{\alpha}$$
.

**Proposition 1.1.31.** To give an equivalence relation on a non-empty set is equivalent to give a partition on it.

*Proof.* Suppose that we have given an equivalence relation  $\rho$  on A. Since  $\rho$  is reflexive,  $a \in [a]_{\rho}$ , for all  $a \in A$ , and hence  $A = \bigcup_{a \in A} [a]_{\rho}$ . Since  $\rho$ -equivalence classes of elements of A are either disjoint or equal (see Proposition 1.1.29), the collection  $\mathcal{P}$  consisting of all distinct  $\rho$ -equivalence classes of elements of A is a partition of A.

Conversely, suppose that  $\mathcal{P} = \{A_{\alpha} : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$  be a partition of A. Define

$$\rho = \{(a,b) \in A \times A : a,b \in A_{\alpha}, \text{ for some } \alpha \in \Lambda\}.$$

Note that  $(a, a) \in \rho$ , for all  $a \in A$ . If  $(a, b) \in \rho$ , then both a and b are in the same  $A_{\alpha}$ , for some  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ , and so  $(b, a) \in \rho$ . So  $\rho$  is symmetric. If  $(a, b), (b, c) \in \rho$ , then  $a, b \in A_{\alpha}$  and  $b, c \in A_{\beta}$ , for some  $\alpha, \beta \in \Lambda$ . Since  $b \in A_{\alpha} \cap A_{\beta}$ , so we must have  $A_{\alpha} = A_{\beta}$ . Therefore,  $(a, c) \in \rho$ . Thus  $\rho$  is transitive. Therefore,  $\rho$  is an equivalence relation on A. One should note that the elements of  $\mathcal{P}$  are precisely the  $\rho$ -equivalence classes in A (verify!).

**Example 1.1.32** (The groups  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  and  $U_n$ ). Fix an integer  $n \geq 2$ . Define a relation  $\equiv_n$  on  $\mathbb{Z}$  by setting

$$a \equiv_n b$$
, if  $a - b = nk$ , for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

If  $a \equiv_n b$  sometimes we also express it as  $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$ , and say that a is congruent to b modulo n. Verify that  $\equiv_n$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Given any  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ , let

$$[a] := \{b \in \mathbb{Z} : b \equiv_n a\} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}$$

be the  $\equiv_n$ -equivalence class of a in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Let

$$\mathbb{Z}_n := \{ [a] : a \in \mathbb{Z} \}$$

be the set of all  $\equiv_n$ -equivalence classes of elements of  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $a,b\in\mathbb{Z}$ . If  $c\in[a]\cap[b]$ , then  $c=a+nk_1$  and  $c=b+nk_2$ , for some  $k_1,k_2\in\mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $a-b=n(k_1-k_2)$ , and hence  $a\equiv_n b$ . Then [a]=[b] in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Therefore, the  $\equiv_n$ -equivalence classes are either disjoint or identical (c.f. Proposition 1.1.29). Use division algorithm to show that  $\equiv_n$ -equivalence classes  $[0],[1],\ldots,[n-1]$  are all distinct, and

$$\mathbb{Z}_n = \{ [k] : 0 \le k \le n - 1 \}.$$

In particular,  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is a finite set containing n elements.

We now define two binary operations on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Suppose that [a] = [a'] and [b] = [b'] in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ , for some  $a, a', b, b' \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then we have

$$a-a'=nk_1,$$
 and  $b-b'=nk_2,$ 

for some  $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore,

$$(a+b) - (a'+b') = n(k_1 - k_2),$$

and hence [a + b] = [a' + b'] in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Therefore, we have a well-defined binary operation on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  (called *addition of integers modulo n*) given by

$$[a] + [b] := [a+b], \ \forall [a], [b] \in \mathbb{Z}_n.$$

1.1. Group 9

Now it is easy to see that,

(i) 
$$([a] + [b]) + [c] = [a] + ([b] + [c])$$
, for all  $[a], [b], [c] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ .

(ii) 
$$[a] + [0] = [a] = [0] + [a]$$
, for all  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ .

(iii) 
$$[a] + [-a] = [0]$$
, for all  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

Therefore,  $(\mathbb{Z}_n, +)$  is a group. Note that, for all  $[a], [b] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$  we have

$$[a] + [b] = [a + b] = [b + a]$$
, since addition in  $\mathbb{Z}$  is commutative,  
=  $[b] + [a]$ .

Therefore,  $(\mathbb{Z}_n, +)$  is an abelian group.

Now we define *multiplication operation on*  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Suppose that [a] = [a'] and [b] = [b']. Then  $a - a' = nk_1$  and  $b - b' = nk_2$ , for some  $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$ab - a'b' = (a - a')b + a'(b - b')$$
  
=  $nk_1b + a'nk_2$   
=  $n(k_1b + a'k_2)$ ,

implies that [ab] = [a'b']. Thus we have a well-defined binary operations on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  (called the *multiplication of integers modulo* n) defined by

$$[a] \cdot [b] := [ab], \ \forall [a], [b] \in \mathbb{Z}_n.$$

Clearly the multiplication modulo n operation on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is both associative and commutative. Note that,

$$[1] \cdot [a] = [a] = [a] \cdot [1], \ \forall [a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n.$$

Therefore,  $[1] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$  is the multiplicative identity in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Moreover, the multiplication distributes over addition from left and right on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Indeed, we have

$$[a] \cdot ([b] + [c]) = [a] \cdot [b] + [a] \cdot [c],$$
 and 
$$([a] + [b]) \cdot [c] = [a] \cdot [c] + [b] \cdot [c].$$

Such a triple  $(\mathbb{Z}_n, +, \cdot)$  is called a *ring*. Since  $n \geq 2$  by assumption, n does not divide 1 in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . So  $[0] \neq [1]$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  by Proposition 1.1.28. Since for any  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ , we have  $[0] \cdot [a] = [0 \cdot a] = [0] \neq [1]$ , we see that  $[0] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$  has no multiplicative inverse in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Therefore,  $(\mathbb{Z}_n, \cdot)$  is just a commutative monoid, but not a group.

We now find out elements of  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  that have multiplicative inverse in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ , and use them to construct a subset of  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  which forms a group with respect to the multiplication modulo n operation. Recall that given  $n,k\in\mathbb{Z}$ , we have  $\gcd(n,k)=1$  if and only if there exists  $a,b\in\mathbb{Z}$  such that an+bk=1. Use this to verify that if [k]=[k'] in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ , then  $\gcd(n,k)=1$  if and only if  $\gcd(n,k')=1$ . Thus we get a well-defined subset

$$U_n := \{ [k] \in \mathbb{Z}_n : \gcd(k, n) = 1 \} \subset \mathbb{Z}_n.$$

Note that,  $[0] \notin U_n$ . If  $[k_1], [k_2] \in U_n$ , then  $\gcd(k_1, n) = 1 = \gcd(k_2, n)$ . Then there exists  $a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$a_1k_1 + b_1n = 1$$
  
and  $a_2k_2 + b_2n = 1$ .

Multiplying these two equations, we have

$$(a_1a_2)(k_1k_2) + (a_1k_1b_2 + a_2k_2b_1 + b_1b_2)n = 1.$$

Then we have  $gcd(k_1k_2, n) = 1$ . Therefore,

$$[k_1] \cdot [k_2] = [k_1 k_2] \in U_n, \ \forall \ [k_1], [k_2] \in U_n.$$

Verify that  $(U_n, \cdot)$  is an abelian group. If p > 1 is a prime number (see Definition ??), show that  $U_p = \mathbb{Z}_p \setminus \{[0]\}$ , as sets.

**Exercise 1.1.33.** Let X be a non-empty set. Let  $\mathcal{P}(X)$  be the set of all subsets of X; called the *power set of* X. Given any two elements  $A, B \in \mathcal{P}(X)$ , define

$$A \triangle B := (A \setminus B) \cup (B \setminus A).$$

The set  $A \triangle B$  is known as the *symmetric difference* of A and B. Show that  $(\mathcal{P}(X), \triangle)$  is a commutative group. (*Hint*: The empty subset  $\emptyset \subset X$  acts as the neutral element in  $\mathcal{P}(X)$ , and every element of  $\mathcal{P}(X)$  is inverse of itself).

**Exercise 1.1.34** (Direct product of two groups). Let (A, \*) and (B, \*) be two groups. Show that the Cartesian product  $G_1 \times G_2$  is a group with respect to the binary operation on it defined by

$$(a_1,b_1)(a_2,b_2) := (a_1 * a_2, b_1 * b_2), \forall (a_1,b_1), (a_2,b_2) \in A \times B.$$

The group  $A \times B$  defined above is called the *direct product* of A with B.

#### 1.2 Subgroup

**Definition 1.2.1** (Subgroup). Let G be a group. A *subgroup* of G is a subset  $H \subseteq G$  such that H is a group with respect to the binary operation induced from G. A subgroup H of G is said to be *proper* if  $H \neq G$ . A subgroup whose underlying set is singleton is called a *trivial* subgroup. If H is a subgroup of G, we express it symbolically by  $H \leq G$ .

For example,  $\mathbb{Z}$  is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{Q}$ ;  $S^1$  is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{C}^*$  etc.

**Exercise 1.2.2.** For each integer n, let  $n\mathbb{Z} := \{nk : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$ 

- (i) Show that  $n\mathbb{Z}$  is a proper subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{1, -1\}$ .
- (ii) Show that any subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}$  is of the form  $n\mathbb{Z}$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Exercise 1.2.3** (Group of  $n^{th}$  roots of unity). Fix an integer  $n \ge 1$ , and let

$$\mu_n := \{ \zeta \in \mathbb{C} \mid \zeta^n = 1 \}.$$

Show that  $\mu_n$  is a subgroup of the circle group  $S^1$ .

**Exercise 1.2.4.** Show that a finite subgroup of  $\mathbb{C}^*$  of order n is  $\mu_n$ .

**Exercise 1.2.5.** Show that  $\{1, -1, i, -i\}$  is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{C}^*$ , where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ .

**Exercise 1.2.6.** For each integer  $n \ge 1$ , show that there is a commutative group of order n.

**Remark 1.2.7.** It is easy to see that any subgroup of an abelian group is abelian. However, the converse is not true, in general. For example, one can easily check that  $S_3$  is a non-abelian group whose all proper subgroups are abelian.

**Lemma 1.2.8.** Let G be a group. A non-empty subset  $H \subseteq G$  forms a subgroup of G if and only if  $ab^{-1} \in H$ , for all  $a, b \in H$ .

*Proof.* Since  $H \neq \emptyset$ , there is an element  $a \in H$ . Then  $e = aa^{-1} \in H$ . In particular, for any  $b \in H$ , its inverse  $b^{-1} = eb^{-1} \in H$ . Then for any  $a, b \in H$ , their product  $ab = a(b^{-1})^{-1} \in H$ . Thus H is closed under the binary operation induced from G. Associativity is obvious. Thus, H is a subgroup of G.

1.2. Subgroup 11

**Exercise 1.2.9.** Let G be a group. Show that a non-empty subset  $H \subseteq G$  forms a subgroup of G if and only if  $a^{-1}b \in H$ , for all  $a, b \in H$ .

**Exercise 1.2.10.** Let G be a group. Let H be a finite non-empty subset of G. Show that H forms a subgroup of G if and only if  $ab \in H$ , for all  $a, b \in H$ . Show by an example that this fails if H is infinite.

**Exercise 1.2.11** (Special linear group). Fix an integer  $n \ge 1$ , and let

$$\operatorname{SL}_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{ A \in \operatorname{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) : \det(A) = 1 \},$$

where  $\det(A)$  denotes the determinant of the matrix A. Show that  $\mathrm{SL}_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a non-trivial proper subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$ . Also show that  $\mathrm{SL}_n(\mathbb{R})$  is non-commutative for  $n \geq 2$ .

**Exercise 1.2.12** (Orthogonal and special orthogonal groups). Fix an integer n > 1, and let

$$O_n(\mathbb{R}) := \{ A \in \mathcal{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) : A^t A = I_n = {}^t A A \},$$

where  ${}^t\!A$  denotes the *transpose* of A (i.e., the  $n \times n$  matrix whose (i,j)-th entry is equal to the (j,i)-th entry of A, for all  $i,j \in \{1,\ldots,n\}$ .

- (i) Show that  $O_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$ .
- (ii) Show that  $SO_n(\mathbb{R}) := \{A \in O_n(\mathbb{R}) : \det(A) = 1\}$  is a subgroup of both  $O_n(\mathbb{R})$  and  $SL_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

The groups  $O_n(\mathbb{R})$  and  $SO_n(\mathbb{R})$  are called the *orthogonal group* and the *special orthogonal group* over  $\mathbb{R}$ , respectively.

**Exercise 1.2.13** (Unitary and special unitary groups). Fix an integer  $n \ge 1$ , and let

$$U_n(\mathbb{C}) := \{ A \in \mathcal{M}_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C}) : AA^* = I_n = A^*A \},$$

where  $A^* = \overline{A}^t$  is the  $n \times n$  matrix over  $\mathbb C$  whose (i,j)-th entry is equal to the complex conjugate of the (j,i)-th entry of A, for all  $i,j \in \{1,\ldots,n\}$ .

- (i) Show that  $U_n(\mathbb{C})$  is a subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ .
- (ii) Show that  $U_1(\mathbb{C}) = S^1$ .
- (iii) Show that  $SU_n(\mathbb{C}) := \{A \in U_n(\mathbb{C}) : \det(A) = 1\}$  is a subgroup of both  $U_n(\mathbb{C})$  and  $SL_n(\mathbb{C})$ .

The groups  $U_n(\mathbb{C})$  and  $SU_n(\mathbb{C})$  are called the *unitary group* and the *special unitary group* over  $\mathbb{C}$ , respectively.

**Proposition 1.2.14** (Center of a group). *Let G be a group. Then* 

$$Z(G) := \{ a \in G : ab = ba, \forall b \in G \}$$

is a commutative subgroup of G, called the center of G.

*Proof.* Clearly  $e \in Z(G)$ . Let  $a \in Z(G)$ . Then for any  $c \in G$  we have

$$ac = ca \implies c = a^{-1}ca \implies ca^{-1} = a^{-1}caa^{-1} = a^{-1}c$$

and hence  $a^{-1} \in Z(G)$ . Then for any  $a, b \in Z(G)$ , we have  $c(ab^{-1})c^{-1} = cac^{-1}cb^{-1}c^{-1} = ab^{-1}$ , for all  $c \in G$ , and hence  $ab^{-1} \in Z(G)$ . Therefore, Z(G) is a subgroup of G. Clearly Z(G) is commutative.

**Exercise 1.2.15.** Show that a group G is commutative if and only if Z(G) = G.

**Exercise 1.2.16.** Find the centers of  $S_3$ ,  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  and  $SL_n(\mathbb{R})$ , where  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Exercise 1.2.17** (Centralizer). Let G be a group. Given an element  $a \in G$  show that the subset

$$C_G(a) := \{ b \in G : ab = ba \}$$

is a subgroup of G, called the *centralizer of* a in G. Show that  $Z(G) = \bigcap_{a \in G} C_G(a)$ .

**Lemma 1.2.18.** Let G be a group, and let  $\{H_{\alpha}\}_{{\alpha}\in\Lambda}$  be a non-empty collection of subgroups of G. Then  $\bigcap_{{\alpha}\in\Lambda}H_{\alpha}$  is a subgroup of G.

*Proof.* Since  $e \in H_{\alpha}$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ , we have  $e \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in \Lambda} H_{\alpha}$ . Let  $a, b \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in \Lambda} H_{\alpha}$  be arbitrary. Since  $a, b \in H_{\alpha}$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ , we have  $ab^{-1} \in H_{\alpha}$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ , and hence  $ab^{-1} \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in \Lambda} H_{\alpha}$ . Thus  $\bigcap_{\alpha \in \Lambda} H_{\alpha}$  is a subgroup of G.

**Corollary 1.2.19.** Let G be a group and S a subset of G. Let  $\mathscr{C}_S$  be the collection of all subgroups of G that contains S. Then  $\langle S \rangle := \bigcap_{H \in \mathscr{C}_S} H$  is the smallest subgroup of G containing S.

*Proof.* By Lemma 1.2.18,  $\langle S \rangle := \bigcap_{H \in \mathscr{C}_S} H$  is a subgroup of G containing S. If H' is any subgroup of G containing S, then  $H' \in \mathcal{C}_S$ , and hence  $\langle S \rangle := \bigcap_{H \in \mathcal{C}_S} H \subseteq H'$ .

**Exercise 1.2.20.** Recall Exercise 1.2.2, and find the subgroup  $2\mathbb{Z} \cap 3\mathbb{Z}$  of  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Exercise 1.2.21.** Is  $2\mathbb{Z} \cup 3\mathbb{Z}$  a subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}$ ? Justify your answer.

**Exercise 1.2.22.** Show that a group cannot be written as a union of its two proper subgroups.

**Definition 1.2.23.** Let G be a group and  $S \subseteq G$ . The group  $\langle S \rangle := \bigcap_{H \in \mathcal{C}_S} H$  is called the *subgroup* of G generated by S. If S is a singleton subset  $S = \{a\}$  of G, we denote by  $\langle a \rangle$ .

**Exercise 1.2.24.** Let G be a group. Find the subgroup of G generated by the empty subset of G.

**Proposition 1.2.25.** Let G be a group, and let S be a non-empty subset of G. Then

$$\langle S \rangle = \{a_1^{e_1} \cdots a_n^{e_n} \mid n \in \mathbb{N}, \text{ and } a_i \in S, e_i \in \{1, -1\}, \forall i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}\}.$$

Proof. Let

$$K := \{a_1^{e_1} \cdots a_n^{e_n} \mid n \in \mathbb{N}, \text{ and } a_i \in S, e_i \in \{1, -1\}, \forall i \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}\}.$$

Clearly  $S \subset K \subseteq G$ . Taking n=2,  $a_1=a_2=a \in S$ ,  $e_1=1$  and  $e_2=-1$ , we have e=a  $a^{-1} \in K$ . Let  $a,b \in K$ . Then  $a=a_1^{e_1} \cdots a_n^{e_n}$  and  $b=b_1^{f_1} \cdots b_m^{f_m}$ , for some  $a_i,b_j \in S$ ,  $e_i,f_j \in \{1,-1\}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m$ , and  $m,n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then  $ab^{-1}=a_1^{e_1} \cdots a_n^{e_n} \cdot (b_1^{f_1} \cdots b_m^{f_m})^{-1}=a_1^{e_1} \cdots a_n^{e_n} \cdot b_m^{-f_m} \cdots b_1^{-f_1} \in K$ . Therefore, K is a subgroup of G containing G. Then by Proposition 1.2.19, we have  $G \cap G$  when  $G \cap G$  is inside  $G \cap G$ . Therefore,  $G \cap G$  is inside  $G \cap G$ . Therefore,  $G \cap G$  is inside  $G \cap G$ .

**Definition 1.2.26.** A group G is said to be *finitely generated* if there exists a finite subset  $S \subseteq G$  such that the subgroup generated by S is equal to G, i.e.,  $\langle G \rangle = G$ .

**Example 1.2.27.** (i) Any finite group is finitely generated.

(ii) The additive group  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$  is finitely generated.

1.2. Subgroup 13

**Exercise 1.2.28.** Let G and H be finitely generated groups. Verify if the direct product  $G \times H$  of G and H, as defined in Exercise 1.1.34, is finitely generated.

**Example 1.2.29.** Let G be a group. Given an element  $a \in G$ , the subgroup of G generated by a can be written as

$$\langle a \rangle = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{Z}\};$$

and is called the *cyclic subgroup* of G generated by a.

**Definition 1.2.30.** Let G be a group. The *order* of an element  $a \in G$  is the smallest positive integer n, if exists, such that  $a^n = e$ . If no such positive integer n exists, we say that the order of a is infinite. We denote by  $\operatorname{ord}(a)$  the order of  $a \in G$ . In other words, if we set  $S_a := \{n \in \mathbb{Z} : n \geq 1 \text{ and } a^n = e\}$ , then

$$\operatorname{ord}(a) := \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \inf S_a, & \text{if} \quad S_a \neq \emptyset, \text{ and} \\ \infty, & \text{if} \quad S_a = \emptyset. \end{array} \right.$$

**Exercise 1.2.31.** Let G be a group and  $a,b \in G$  be such that ab = ba. Show that  $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Exercise 1.2.32.** Let G be a group. Let  $a, b \in G$  be elements of finite orders.

- (i) If  $a^m = e$ , for some  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , then show that  $\operatorname{ord}(a) \mid m$ .
- (ii) Show that  $\operatorname{ord}(a^n) = \frac{\operatorname{ord}(a)}{\gcd(n,\operatorname{ord}(a))}$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .
- (iii) Show that both a and  $a^{-1}$  have the same order in G.
- (iv) Show that both ab and ba have the same finite order in G.

**Exercise 1.2.33.** Let G be a group, and let a and b two elements of G of finite orders with ab = ba.

- (i) Show that ord(ab) divides lcm(ord(a), ord(b)).
- (ii) If gcd(ord(a), ord(b)) = 1, show that ord(ab) = ord(a) ord(b).

**Remark 1.2.34.** If we remove the assumption that ab=ba from the above Exercise 1.2.33 we can say absolutely nothing about the order of the product ab. In fact, given any integers m,n,r>1, there exists a finite group G with elements  $a,b\in G$  such that  $\operatorname{ord}(a)=m$ ,  $\operatorname{ord}(b)=n$  and  $\operatorname{ord}(ab)=r$ . The proof of this surprising fact requires some advanced techniques, and may appear at the end of this course.

Exercise 1.2.35. Consider the matrices

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 1/2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

in  $GL_2(\mathbb{R})$ . Show that ord(A) = ord(B) = 2 while  $ord(AB) = \infty$ . Consequently, the subgroup  $\langle A, B \rangle \leq GL_2(\mathbb{R})$  generated by two order 2 elements of  $GL_2(\mathbb{R})$  is infinite.

**Exercise 1.2.36.** Let G be an abelian group. Let  $H := \{a \in G : \operatorname{ord}(a) \text{ is finite}\}$ . Show that H is a subgroup of G.

**Exercise 1.2.37.** Show that any finite group of even order contains an element of order 2.

**Exercise 1.2.38.** Let G be a group such that any non-identity element of G has order G. Show that G is abelian.

**Exercise 1.2.39.** Find two elements  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  of  $S_3$  such that  $\langle \sigma, \tau \rangle = S_3$ .

**Exercise 1.2.40** (Derived subgroup). Let G be a group. The *commutator* of two elements  $a, b \in G$  is the element  $[a, b] := aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in G$ . Given  $a, b \in G$ , show that

- (i) [a, b] = e if and only if ab = ba;
- (ii)  $[a, b]^{-1} = [b, a]$ ; and
- (iii)  $g[a,b]g^{-1} = [gag^{-1}, gbg^{-1}]$ , for all  $g \in G$ .

The subgroup  $[G,G]:=\langle [a,b]:a,b\in G\rangle$  of G generated by all commutators of elements of G is called the *derived subgroup* or the *commutator subgroup* of G. Show that [G,G] is a trivial subgroup of G if and only if G is abelian.

#### 1.3 Cyclic group

Let G be a group. For any element  $a \in G$ , we consider the subset

$$\langle a \rangle := \{ a^n : n \in \mathbb{Z} \} \subseteq G.$$

Clearly  $e \in \langle a \rangle$ , and for any two elements  $a^n, a^m \in \langle a \rangle$ , we have  $a^n \cdot (b^m)^{-1} = a^{n-m} \in \langle a \rangle$ . Therefore,  $\langle a \rangle$  is a subgroup of G, called the *cyclic subgroup* of G generated by a. If H is any subgroup of G with  $a \in H$ , then  $a^{-1} \in H$ , and hence  $a^n \in H$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore,  $\langle a \rangle \subseteq H$ . Therefore,  $\langle a \rangle$  is the smallest subgroup of G containing a.

**Definition 1.3.1.** A group G is said to be *cyclic* if there is an element  $a \in G$  such that  $G = \langle a \rangle$ . The element a is called the *generator* of  $\langle a \rangle$ .

**Remark 1.3.2.** If G is a cyclic group generated by  $a \in G$ , then  $\langle a^{-1} \rangle = G$ . Therefore, if  $a^2 \neq e$ , the cyclic group  $\langle a \rangle$  has at least two distinct generators, namely a and  $a^{-1}$ . We shall see later that if a cyclic group  $\langle a \rangle$  has at least two distinct generators, then we must have  $a^2 \neq e$ .

For example, the additive group  $\mathbb{Z}$  is a cyclic group generated by 1 or -1. It is clear that a cyclic group may have more than one generators. For example,  $\mathbb{Z}_3$  is a cyclic group that can be generated by [1] or [2].

**Example 1.3.3.**  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is a finite cyclic group generated by  $[1] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ . To see this, note that for any  $[m] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ , we have  $[m] = [m \cdot 1] = m[1] \in \langle [1] \rangle \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_n$ . Therefore,  $\mathbb{Z}_n \subseteq \langle [1] \rangle$ , and hence  $\mathbb{Z}_n = \langle [1] \rangle$ .

**Proposition 1.3.4.** Fix an integer  $n \geq 2$ . Then  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$  is a generator of the group  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  if and only if gcd(a, n) = 1.

*Proof.* Suppose that  $\langle [a] \rangle = \mathbb{Z}_n$ . Then there exists  $m \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that [1] = m[a] = [ma]. Then  $n \mid (ma-1)$  and so ma-1=nd, for some  $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore, ma+n(-d)=1, and hence by Corollary ?? we have  $\gcd(a,n)=1$ . Conversely, if  $\gcd(a,n)=1$ , then there exists  $m,q \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that am+nq=1. Then  $n \mid (1-am)$  and hence [a]=[1] in  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ . Hence the result follows.  $\square$ 

**Corollary 1.3.5.** For a prime number p > 0,  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  has p - 1 distinct generators.

Clearly any cyclic group is abelian. However, the converse is not true in general. For example, the Klein four-group  $K_4$  in Example 1.1.8 (iv) is abelian but not cyclic (verify).

**Exercise 1.3.6.** Give an example of an infinite abelian group which is not cyclic.

**Proposition 1.3.7.** *Subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic.* 

*Proof.* Let  $G = \langle a \rangle$  be a cyclic group generated by  $a \in G$ . Let  $H \subseteq G$  be a subgroup of G. If  $H = \{e\}$  is the trivial subgroup of G, then  $H = \langle e \rangle$ . Suppose that  $H \neq \{e\}$ . Then there exists

1.3. Cyclic group 15

 $b \in G$  such that  $b \neq e$  and  $b \in H$ . Since  $G = \langle a \rangle$ , we have  $b = a^n$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Since H is a group and  $a^n = b \in H$ , we have  $a^{-n} = b^{-1} \in H$ . Therefore,

$$S := \{ k \in \mathbb{N} : a^k \in H \} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$$

is a non-empty subset of  $\mathbb N$ . Then by well-ordering principle of  $(\mathbb N, \leq)$  (see Theorem ??) S has a least element, say  $m \in S$ . We claim that  $H = \langle a^m \rangle$ . Clearly  $\langle a^m \rangle \subseteq H$ . Let  $h \in H$  be arbitrary. Since  $H \subseteq G = \langle a \rangle$ , we have  $h = a^n$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb Z$ . Then by division algorithm (see Theorem ??) there exists  $q, r \in \mathbb Z$  with  $0 \le r < m$  such that n = mq + r. Then  $a^r = a^{n-mq} = a^n(a^m)^{-q} = h(a^m)^{-q} \in H$ . Since m is the least element of S, we must have r = 0. Then n = mq, and so we have  $h = a^n = a^m q \in \langle a^m \rangle$ . Therefore,  $H \subseteq \langle a^m \rangle$ , and hence  $H = \langle a^m \rangle$ .

**Exercise 1.3.8.** Show that any subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}$  is of the form  $n\mathbb{Z} := \{nk : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Lemma 1.3.9.** Let  $G = \langle a \rangle$  be an infinite cyclic group. Then for all  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  with  $m \neq n$ , we have  $a^n \neq a^m$ .

*Proof.* Suppose not, then there exists  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  with m > n such that  $a^m = a^n$ . Then  $a^{m-n} = a^m (a^n)^{-1} = e$ . Since m - n is a positive integer, the subset

$$S := \{ k \in \mathbb{N} : a^k = e \} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$$

is non-empty. Then by well-ordering principle S has a least element, say d. We claim that  $G=\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}\text{ with }0\leq k\leq d-1\}$ . Clearly  $\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}\text{ with }0\leq k\leq d-1\}\subseteq G$ . Let  $b\in G$  be arbitrary. Then  $b=a^n$ , for some  $n\in\mathbb{Z}$ . Then by division algorithm (Theorem  $\ref{thm:eq:condition}$ ), there exists  $q,r\in\mathbb{Z}$  with  $0\leq r< d$  such that n=dq+r. Since  $d\in S$ , we have  $a^d=e$ . Then  $b=a^n=a^{dq+r}=(a^d)^qa^r=a^r\in\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}\text{ with }0\leq k\leq d-1\}$  implies  $G\subseteq\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}\text{ with }0\leq k\leq d-1\}$ , and hence  $G=\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}\text{ with }0\leq k\leq d-1\}$ . This is not possible since G is infinite by our assumption. Hence the result follows.

**Corollary 1.3.10.** *Let*  $G = \langle a \rangle$  *be a cyclic group generated by*  $a \in G$ . *Then* G *is infinite if and only if* ord(a) *is infinite.* 

*Proof.* If  $G = \langle a \rangle$  is infinite, then for any non-zero integer n, we have  $a^n \neq a^0 = e$  by Lemma 1.3.9. Therefore,  $\operatorname{ord}(a)$  is infinite. Conversely, if  $\operatorname{ord}(a)$  is infinite, then  $a^n \neq e$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ . Since  $a^n = a^m$  implies  $a^{m-n} = e$ , the map  $f : \mathbb{Z} \to G$  given by  $f(n) = a^n$ ,  $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , is injective. Therefore, since  $\mathbb{Z}$  is infinite, G must be infinite.

**Corollary 1.3.11.** Let G be a finite cyclic group generated by a. Then  $|G| = \operatorname{ord}(a)$ .

*Proof.* Since G is finite,  $\operatorname{ord}(a)$  must be finite by Corollary 1.3.10. Suppose that  $\operatorname{ord}(a)=n\in\mathbb{N}$ . Then for any two integers  $r,s\in\{k\in\mathbb{Z}:0\le k\le n-1\}$ ,  $a^r=a^s$  implies  $a^{r-s}=e$ , and hence r=s, because  $|r-s|< n=\operatorname{ord}(a)$ . Then all the elements in the collection  $\mathscr{C}:=\{a^k:k\in\mathbb{Z}:0\le k\le n-1\}$  are distinct, and that  $\mathscr{C}$  has n elements. Clearly  $\mathscr{C}\subseteq G$ . Given any  $b\in G=\langle a\rangle, b=a^m$ , for some  $m\in\mathbb{Z}$ . Then by division algorithm (Theorem  $\ref{thm:eq:condition}$ ) there exists  $q,r\in\mathbb{Z}$  with  $0\le r< n$  such that m=nq+r. Then  $b=a^m=a^{nq+r}=(a^n)^qa^r=a^r\in\mathscr{C}$ , since  $a^n=e$ . Therefore,  $G\subseteq\mathscr{C}$ , and hence  $G=\mathscr{C}$ . Thus,  $|G|=\operatorname{ord}(a)$ .

**Corollary 1.3.12.** Let G be a finite group of order n. Then G is cyclic if and only if it contains an element of order n.

*Proof.* If G is cyclic, then the result follows from Corollary 1.3.11. Conversely, if G contains an element a of order n, then it follows from the proof of Corollary 1.3.11 that the cyclic subgroup  $\langle a \rangle$  of G has n elements, and hence  $\langle a \rangle = G$ .

**Corollary 1.3.13.** Any non-trivial subgroup of an infinite cyclic group is infinite and cyclic.

*Proof.* Let G be an infinite cyclic group generated by  $a \in G$ . Let H be a non-trivial subgroup of G. Since H is cyclic by Proposition 1.3.7, we have  $H = \langle b \rangle$ , where  $b = a^r$  for some  $r \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ . Since G is an infinite cyclic group, by above Lemma 1.3.9, we have  $b^m = a^{mr} \neq a^{nr} = b^n$  for  $m \neq n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore,  $H = \langle b \rangle = \{b^k : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  is infinite.

**Proposition 1.3.14.** *Let* G *be a finite cyclic group of order* n. *Then for each positive integer* d *such that*  $d \mid n$ , *there is a unique subgroup* H *of* G *of order* d.

*Proof.* Let  $G = \langle a \rangle$  be a finite cyclic group of order n. Then ord(a) = n by Corollary 1.3.11. Since  $d \mid n$ , there exists  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$n = dq$$
.

Let  $H := \langle a^q \rangle$  be the cyclic subgroup of G generated by  $a^q$ . Since G is finite, so is H. Since  $\operatorname{ord}(a) = n$ , we see that d is the least positive integer such that  $(a^q)^d = a^{qd} = a^n = e$ . Therefore,  $\operatorname{ord}(a^q) = d$ , and hence |H| = d by Corollary 1.3.11.

We now show uniqueness of H in G. If d=1, then the trivial subgroup  $\{e\}\subseteq G$  is the only subgroup of G of order d=1. Suppose that d>1. Let H and K be two subgroups of G of order d, where  $d\mid n$ . Then by Proposition 1.3.7 we have  $H=\langle\,a^n\,\rangle$  and  $K=\langle\,a^m\,\rangle$ , for some  $m,n\in\mathbb{N}$ . Since subgroup of a finite group is finite, by Corollary 1.3.10 we have  $\operatorname{ord}(a^n)=d=\operatorname{ord}(a^m)$ . By division algorithm (Theorem  $\ref{eq:total_point}$ ) there exists unique integers k,r with  $0\leq r< q$  such that m=kq+r. Then dm=kdq+dr=kn+dr gives

$$e = (a^m)^d = a^{dm} = (a^n)^k a^{dr} = a^{dr}.$$

Since  $0 \le r < q$ , we have  $0 \le dr < dq = n$ . If  $r \ne 0$ , this contradicts the fact that  $\operatorname{ord}(a) = n$ . Therefore, we must have r = 0, and hence  $a^m = a^{kq+r} = (a^k)^q \in \langle a^k \rangle = H$ . Therefore,  $K \subseteq H$ . Since |H| = |K| = d, we have H = K.

**Proposition 1.3.15.** An infinite cyclic group has exactly two generators.

*Proof.* Let  $G = \langle a \rangle = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  be an infinite cyclic group. Let  $b \in G$  be any generator of G. Then  $b = a^n$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Similarly, since  $a \in G = \langle b \rangle$ , we have  $a = b^m$ , for some  $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then we have  $a = b^m = (a^n)^m = a^{mn}$ . Then by Lemma 1.3.9 we have mn = 1. Since both m and n are integers, we must have  $m, n \in \{1, -1\}$ . Therefore,  $b \in \{a, a^{-1}\}$ .

**Exercise 1.3.16.** Let  $G=\langle a\rangle$  be a finite cyclic group of order n. Given any  $k\in\mathbb{N}$  with  $1\leq k\leq n-1$ , show that  $\langle a^k\rangle=G$  if and only if  $\gcd(n,k)=1$ . Conclude that G has exactly  $\phi(n)$  number of generators, where  $\phi(n)$  is the number of elements in the set  $\{k\in\mathbb{N}:\gcd(n,k)=1\}$ . (*Hint:* Use the idea of the proof of Proposition 1.3.4.)

**Remark 1.3.17.** The map  $\phi: \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}$  given by sending  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  to the cardinality of the set

$$\{k \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \le k \le n \text{ and } \gcd(n, k) = 1\},$$

is called the *Euler phi function*.

**Exercise 1.3.18.** Give an example of a non-abelian group G such that all of its proper subgroups are cyclic.

**Exercise 1.3.19.** Show that a non-commutative group always has a non-trivial proper subgroup.

**Exercise 1.3.20.** Show that a group having at most two non-trivial subgroups is cyclic.

**Exercise 1.3.21.** Let G be a finite group having exactly one non-trivial subgroup. Show that  $|G| = p^2$ , for some prime number p.

Exercise 1.3.22. Give examples of infinite abelian groups having

- (i) exactly one element of finite order;
- (ii) all of its non-trivial elements have order 2.

**Exercise 1.3.23.** (i) Show that  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  is not cyclic.

- (ii) Show that any finitely generated subgroup of  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  is cyclic.
- (iii) Conclude that  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  is not finitely generated.
- (iv) Give an example of a proper subgroup of  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  that is not cyclic.

#### 1.4 Product of subgroups

**Definition 1.4.1.** Let G be a group. For any two non-empty subsets H and K of G, we define their product  $HK := \{hk : h \in H, k \in K\}$ .

**Exercise 1.4.2.** Show by example that HK need not be a group in general even if both H and K are subgroups of a group.

**Theorem 1.4.3.** Let H and K be two subgroups of G. Then HK is a group if and only if HK = KH.

*Proof.* Note that, for any  $h \in H$  and  $k \in K$  we have  $h = h \cdot e \in HK$  and  $k = e \cdot k \in HK$ . Therefore,  $H \subseteq HK$  and  $K \subseteq HK$ .

Suppose that HK is a group. Then  $kh \in HK$ , for all  $h \in H \subseteq HK$  and  $k \in K \subseteq HK$ , and hence  $KH \subseteq HK$ . Let  $h \in H$  and  $k \in K$ . Since HK is a group,  $hk \in HK$  implies  $(hk)^{-1} \in HK$ , and so  $(hk)^{-1} = h_1k_1$ , for some  $h_1 \in H$  and  $k_1 \in K$ . Then  $hk = \left((hk)^{-1}\right)^{-1} = k_1^{-1}h_1^{-1} \in KH$ . Therefore,  $HK \subseteq KH$ , and hence HK = KH.

Conversely suppose that HK = KH. Let  $h_1k_1, h_2k_2 \in HK$  with  $h_1, h_2 \in H$  and  $k_1, k_2 \in K$ . Since  $k_2^{-1}h_2^{-1} \in KH = HK$ , there exists  $h_3 \in H$  and  $k_3 \in K$  such that  $k_2^{-1}h_2^{-1} = h_3k_3$ . Again  $k_1h_3 \in KH = HK$  implies there exists  $h_4 \in H$  and  $k_4 \in K$  such that  $k_1h_3 = h_4k_4$ . Now

$$(h_1k_1)(h_2k_2)^{-1} = h_1k_1k_2^{-1}h_2^{-1}$$
  
=  $h_1k_1h_3k_3$   
=  $h_1h_4k_4k_3 \in HK$ .

Therefore, HK is a subgroup of G.

**Corollary 1.4.4.** If H and K are subgroups of a commutative group, then HK is a group.

**Notation:** For a finite set S, we denote by |S| the number of elements of S.

Remark 1.4.5. The phrase "number of elements of S" is ambiguous when S is not a finite set. For example, both  $\mathbb Z$  and  $\mathbb R$  are infinite sets, but there are some considerable differences between "the number of elements" of them;  $\mathbb Z$  is a countable set, while  $\mathbb R$  is an uncountable set. So the "number of elements" (whatever that means) for  $\mathbb Z$  and  $\mathbb R$  should not be the same. For this reason, we need an appropriate concept of "number of elements" for an infinite set S, known as the *cardinality* of S, also denoted by |S|. When S is a finite set, the cardinality of S is determined by the number of elements of S. The cardinality of  $\mathbb Z$  is denoted by  $\aleph_0$  (aleph-naught) and the cardinality of  $\mathbb R$  is  $2^{\aleph_0}$ , which is also denoted by  $\aleph_1$  or  $\mathfrak c$ .

**Definition 1.4.6.** The *order* of a group G is the cardinality |G| of its underlying set G. For a finite group, its order is precisely the number of elements in it.

For example, the order of  $S_3$  is 6, while the order of  $\mathbb{Z}$  is  $\aleph_0$ .

**Lemma 1.4.7.** If H and K are finite subgroups of a group G, then

$$|HK| = \frac{|H| \cdot |K|}{|H \cap K|}.$$

*Proof.* For each positive integer n, let  $J_n := \{k \in \mathbb{N} : k \leq n\}$ . Let  $H = \{h_i : i \in J_n\}$  and  $K = \{k_j : j \in J_m\}$ . Then  $HK = \{h_ik_j : i \in J_n, j \in J_m\}$ . To find the number of elements of HK, for each pair  $(i,j) \in J_n \times J_m$ , we need to count the number of times  $h_ik_j$  repeats in the collection  $\mathscr{C} := \{h_ik_j : (i,j) \in J_n \times J_m\}$ . Fix  $(i,j) \in J_n \times J_m$ . If  $h_ik_j = h_pk_q$ , for some  $(p,q) \in J_n \times J_m$ , then  $t := h_p^{-1}h_i = k_qk_j^{-1} \in H \cap K$ . So any element  $h_pk_q \in \mathscr{C}$ , which coincides with  $h_ik_j$  is of the form  $(h_it^{-1})(tk_j)$ , for some  $t \in H \cap K$ . Conversely, for any  $t \in H \cap K$ , we have  $(h_it^{-1})(tk_j) = h_i(t^{-1}t)k_j = h_iek_j = h_ik_j$ . Therefore, the element  $h_ik_j$  appears exactly  $|H \cap K|$ -times in the collection  $\mathscr{C}$ , and hence we have

$$|HK| = \frac{|H| \cdot |K|}{|H \cap K|}.$$

This completes the proof.

**Proposition 1.4.8.** Let H and K be subgroups of G. Then HK is a subgroup of G if and only if  $HK = \langle H \cup K \rangle$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that HK is a subgroup of G. Since  $H \subseteq HK$  and  $K \subseteq HK$ , we have  $H \cup K \subseteq HK$ , and hence  $\langle H \cup K \rangle \subseteq HK$ . Since  $\langle H \cup K \rangle$  is a group containing  $H \cup K$ , for any  $h \in H$  and  $h \in K$  we have  $hk \in \langle H \cup K \rangle$ . Therefore,  $HK \subseteq \langle H \cup K \rangle$ , and hence  $HK = \langle H \cup K \rangle$ . Converse is obvious since  $\langle H \cup K \rangle$  is a group and  $HK = \langle H \cup K \rangle$  by assumption.

#### 1.5 Lattice of subgroups

**Definition 1.5.1.** A relation " $\leq$ " on a non-empty set  $\mathcal{S}$  is said to a *partial order relation* if it is reflexive, anti-symmetric and transitive (see Definition 1.1.27). A *partially ordered set* (or, in short a *poset*) is a pair ( $\mathcal{S}$ ,  $\leq$ ), where  $\mathcal{S}$  is a non-empty set together with a partial order relation " $\leq$ " on it.

Let  $(S, \leq)$  be a poset. Given a collection of elements  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  from S, an element  $c \in S$  is said to be an

- (i) upper bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$  if  $a_{\lambda} \leq c, \forall \lambda \in \Lambda$ .
- (ii) lower bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$  if  $c \leq a_{\lambda}, \forall \lambda \in \Lambda$ .

An element  $c_0 \in \mathcal{S}$  is said to be

- (i) a least upper bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$  if
  - $c_0$  is an upper bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ , and
  - if *d* is an upper bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ , then  $c_0 \leq d$ .
- (ii) a greatest lower bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$  if
  - $c_0$  is a lower bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ , and
  - if *d* is any lower bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ , then  $d \leq c_0$ .

**Lemma 1.5.2.** Let  $(S, \leq)$  be a poset. Let  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  be a non-empty collection of elements of S. If least upper bound (resp., greatest lower bound) of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  exists in  $(S, \leq)$ , then it must be unique.

*Proof.* Suppose that  $c_0$  and  $d_0$  be least upper bounds of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ . Then  $c_0 \leq d_0$  and  $d_0 \leq c_0$ . Since " $\leq$ " is anti-symmetric, we have  $c_0 = d_0$ . The same argument shows that, the greatest upper bound of  $\{a_{\lambda} : \lambda \in \Lambda\}$  in  $(S, \leq)$ , if exists, is unique.

**Definition 1.5.3** (Lattice). A partially ordered set  $(S, \leq)$  is said to be a *lattice* if the least upper bound and the greatest lower bound of any two elements of S exist in S.

**Proposition 1.5.4.** Let G be a group, and let S be the set of all subgroups of G. Define a relation  $\leq$  on S by setting

$$H \leq K$$
 if  $H \subseteq K$ .

*Then*  $(S, \leq)$  *is a lattice.* 

*Proof.* Clearly ' $\leq$ ' is a partial ordering relation on  $\mathcal{S}$  (verify). Let H and K be any two subgroups of G. As we have noticed before,  $\langle H \cup K \rangle$  is the smallest subgroup of G containing H and K, it is the least upper bound of  $\{H, K\}$  inside  $(\mathcal{S}, \leq)$ . Since  $H \cap K \leq H$  and  $H \cap K \leq K$ , and for any subgroup J of G with  $J \subseteq H$  and  $J \subseteq K$ , we have  $J \subseteq H \cap K$ , we see that  $H \cap K$  is the greatest lower bound of  $\{H, K\}$  in  $(\mathcal{S}, \leq)$ .

**Definition 1.5.5.** Let G be a group. Given any two subgroups H and K of G, if  $H \leq K$ , we place H below K and draw a vertical line segment between them to indicate that H is sitting inside K. This process generates a diagram, known as the *lattice diagram of subgroups of* G.

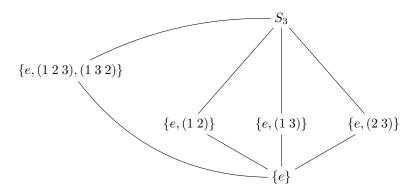
**Example 1.5.6.** Consider the group  $\mu_4=\{\zeta\in\mathbb{C}^*:\zeta^4=1\}=\{1,-1,\sqrt{-1},-\sqrt{-1}\}$  of  $4^{\mathrm{th}}$  roots of unity. Note that  $\mu_2:=\{1,-1\}$  and  $\mu_1:=\{1\}$  are only subgroups of  $G=\mu_4$ , and that  $\mu_1\leq\mu_2\leq\mu_4$ . Then the lattice structure of  $\mu_4$  can be written as

$$\mu_4 = \{1, -1, \sqrt{-1}, -\sqrt{-1}\}$$

$$\mu_2 = \{1, -1\}$$

$$\mu_1 = \{1\}$$

Exercise 1.5.7. Write down all subgroups of the symmetric group  $S_3$  and the associated lattice structure. The subgroup of  $S_3$  generated by a 2-cycle  $\sigma \in S_3$  consist of  $\sigma$  and the neutral element only. There are three such subgroups. There are only two 3-cycles in  $S_3$ , namely  $(1\ 2\ 3)$ ,  $(1\ 3\ 2)$ , and they satisfies  $(1\ 2\ 3)^2 = (1\ 3\ 2)$  and  $(1\ 2\ 3)^3 = e$ . So,  $\langle (1\ 2\ 3) \rangle = \{e, (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\}$ . Thus the lattice structure of  $(S_3, \leq)$  can be written as follows.



#### **Chapter 2**

## **Permutation Groups**

#### 2.1 Definition and examples

Let X be a non-empty set. A *permutation* on X is a bijective map  $\sigma: X \to X$ . We denote by  $S_X$  the set of all permutations on X. For notational simplicity, when |X| = n, fixing a bijection of X with the subset  $J_n := \{1, 2, 3, \ldots, n\} \subset \mathbb{N}$  we may identify  $S_X$  with  $S_n$ . An element  $\sigma \in S_n$  can be described by a *two-column notation* as follow.

(2.1.1) 
$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \cdots & n \\ \sigma(1) & \sigma(2) & \sigma(3) & \cdots & \sigma(n) \end{pmatrix} \text{ or, } \sigma = \begin{cases} 1 \mapsto \sigma(1) \\ 2 \mapsto \sigma(2) \\ \vdots \\ n \mapsto \sigma(n) \end{cases}$$

Since elements of  $S_n$  are bijective maps of  $J_n$  onto itself, composition of two elements of  $S_n$  is again an element of  $S_n$ . Thus we have a binary operation

$$\circ: S_n \times S_n \longrightarrow S_n, \ (\sigma, \tau) \longmapsto \tau \circ \sigma.$$

For example, consider the elements  $\sigma, \tau \in S_4$  defined by

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \ \tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then their composition  $\tau \circ \sigma$  is the permutation

$$\tau \circ \sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Clearly composition of functions  $J_n \to J_n$  is associative, and for any  $\sigma \in S_n$  its pre-composition and post-composition with the identity map of  $I_n$  is  $\sigma$  itself. Also inverse of a bijective map is again bijective. Thus for all integer  $n \ge 1$ ,  $(S_n, \circ)$  is a group, called the *Symmetric group* (or, the *permutation group*) on  $J_n$ .

**Remark 2.1.2.** For each integer  $n \geq 0$ , the symmetric group  $S_{n+1}$  can be understood as the group of symmetries of a regular n-simplex inside  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ . The *standard* n-simplex

$$\Delta^n := \{ (t_0, \dots, t_n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} : \sum_{j=1}^n t_j = 1, \ t_j \ge 1, \forall \ j = 0, 1, \dots, n. \} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$$

is an example of a regular n-simplex. This has vertices the unit vectors  $\{e_0, e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , where

$$e_0 = (1, 0, 0, \dots, 0, 0),$$
  
 $e_1 = (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0, 0),$   
 $\vdots = \vdots$   
 $e_n = (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0, 1).$ 

For example,

- $\Delta^0$  is a point,
- $\Delta^1$  is the straight line segment  $[-1,1] \subset \mathbb{R} \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ ,
- $\Delta^2$  is an equilateral triangle in the plane  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,
- $\Delta^3$  is a regular tetrahedron in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , and so on.

**Exercise 2.1.3.** Show that  $S_1$  is a trivial group, and  $S_2$  is an abelian group with two elements.

**Lemma 2.1.4.** For all integer  $n \geq 3$ , the group  $S_n$  is non-commutative.

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$  be defined by

$$\sigma(k) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 2, & \text{if} \quad k = 1 \\ 1, & \text{if} \quad k = 2 \\ k, & \text{if} \quad k \in I_n \setminus \{1,2\} \end{array} \right., \quad \text{and} \quad \tau(k) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 3, & \text{if} \quad k = 1 \\ 1, & \text{if} \quad k = 3 \\ k, & \text{if} \quad k \in I_n \setminus \{1,3\} \end{array} \right..$$

Since  $\tau \circ \sigma(1) = 2$  and  $\sigma \circ \tau(1) = 3$ , we have  $\sigma \circ \tau \neq \tau \circ \sigma$ . Therefore,  $S_n$  is non-commutative.  $\square$ 

#### 2.2 Cycles

Let  $\sigma \in S_n$  be given. Consider its two-column notation as in (2.1.1).

(R1) If  $\sigma(k) = k$ , for some  $k \in J_n$ , we may drop the corresponding column from its two-column notation, and rearrange its columns, if required, to get an expression of the form

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & k_2 & \cdots & k_{r-1} & k_r \\ \sigma(k_1) & \sigma(k_2) & \cdots & \sigma(k_{r-1}) & \sigma(k_r) \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $k_1, \ldots, k_r$  are all distinct.

By re-indexing, if required, we can find a partition of  $\{k_1, \ldots, k_r\}$  into disjoint subsets, say

$$\{k_1,\ldots,k_r\} = \bigcup_{i=1}^m \{k_{i,1},\ldots,k_{i,r_i}\}$$

with  $m \geq 1$ ,  $2 \leq r_i \leq r$ , for all  $i \in \{1, ..., m\}$ , and  $r_1 + \cdots + r_m = r$ , such that for all  $i \in \{1, ..., m\}$  we have

(2.2.1) 
$$\sigma(k_{i,j}) = \begin{cases} k_{i,j+1}, & \text{if} \quad j \in \{1, \dots, r_i - 1\}, \\ k_{i,1}, & \text{if} \quad j = r_i, \text{ and} \\ k_{ij}, & \text{if} \quad k_{ij} \in J_n \setminus \{k_1, \dots, k_r\}. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\sigma$  can be expressed as

(2.2.2) 
$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} k_{1,1} & \cdots & k_{1,r_1-1} & k_{1,r_1} & \cdots & k_{m,1} & \cdots & k_{m,r_m} & k_{m,r_m-1} \\ k_{1,2} & \cdots & k_{1,r_1} & k_{1,1} & \cdots & k_{m,2} & \cdots & k_{m,r_m} & k_{m,1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

2.2. Cycles 23

When m = 1 in the above notation,  $\sigma$  can be expressed as

(2.2.3) 
$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & k_2 & \cdots & k_{r-1} & k_r \\ k_2 & k_3 & \cdots & k_r & k_1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Such a permutation is called a cycle.

**Definition 2.2.4** (Cycle). An element  $\sigma \in S_n$  is called a *r-cycle* or a cycle of length r if there exists distinct r elements, say  $k_1, \ldots, k_r \in J_n := \{1, \ldots, n\}$  such that  $\sigma(k) = k$ , for all  $k \in J_n \setminus \{k_1, \ldots, k_r\}$  and

 $\sigma(k_i) = \begin{cases} k_{i+1} & \text{if} \quad i \in \{1, \dots, r-1\}, \\ k_1 & \text{if} \quad i = r. \end{cases}$ 

In this case,  $\sigma$  is expressed as  $\sigma=(k_1\ k_2\ \cdots\ k_r)$ . A 2-cycle is called a *transposition*.

**Remark 2.2.5.** Note that according to our definition 2.2.4, a cycle in  $S_n$  always have length at least 2. So we don't talk about 1-cycle as used in some of the standard text books.

With the notation above, the permutation  $\sigma$  in (2.2.2) can be written as a product of cycles

$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} k_{1,1} & \cdots & k_{1,r_1-1} & k_{1,r_1} \\ k_{1,2} & \cdots & k_{1,r_1} & k_{1,1} \end{pmatrix} \circ \cdots \circ \begin{pmatrix} k_{m,1} & \cdots & k_{m,r_{m-1}} & k_{m,r_m} \\ k_{m,2} & \cdots & k_{m,r_m} & k_{m,1} \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= (k_{1,1} & \cdots & k_{1,r_1-1} & k_{1,r_1}) \circ \cdots \circ (k_{m,1} & \cdots & k_{m,r_{m-1}} & k_{m,r_m})$$

**Remark 2.2.6.** Transpositions are of particular interests. We shall see later that any  $\sigma \in S_n$  can be written as product of either even number of transpositions or odd number of transpositions, and accordingly we call  $\sigma \in S_n$  an even permutation or an odd permutation.

**Example 2.2.7.** Using cycle notation, the group  $S_3$  can be written as

$$S_3 = \{e, (1\ 2), (1\ 3), (2\ 3), (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\},\$$

where  $(1\ 2)$ ,  $(1\ 3)$  and  $(2\ 3)$  are transpositions. However, we can write 3-cycles as product of 2-cycles as  $(1\ 2\ 3) = (2\ 3) \circ (1\ 3)$  and  $(1\ 3\ 2) = (2\ 3) \circ (1\ 2)$ . Also, the identity element e can be written as  $e = (1\ 2) \circ (1\ 2)$  or  $e = (1\ 3) \circ (1\ 3)$  etc. So the decomposition of  $\sigma \in S_n$  as a product of transpositions is not unique.

**Proposition 2.2.8.** Let  $\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r) \in S_n$  be a r-cycle. Then for any  $\tau \in S_n$  we have

$$\tau \sigma \tau^{-1} = (\tau(k_1) \ \tau(k_2) \ \cdots \ \tau(k_r)).$$

Proof. Note that we have

$$(\tau \sigma \tau^{-1})(\tau(k_i)) = \tau(\sigma(k_i)) = \tau(k_{i+1}), \ \forall i \in \{1, \dots, r-1\},$$
 and  $(\tau \sigma \tau^{-1})(\tau(k_r)) = \tau(\sigma(k_r)) = \tau(k_1).$ 

It remains to show that  $(\tau\sigma\tau^{-1})(k)=k, \ \forall \ k\in J_n\setminus\{\tau(k_1),\ldots,\tau(k_r)\}$ . For this, note that  $\tau^{-1}(k)\in J_n\setminus\{k_1,\ldots,k_r\}$ , and so  $\sigma(\tau^{-1}(k))=\tau^{-1}(k)$ . Therefore, we have  $(\tau\sigma\tau^{-1})(k)=\tau(\sigma(\tau^{-1}(k)))=\tau(\tau^{-1}(k))=k$ . This completes the proof.

**Corollary 2.2.9.** Let  $\sigma \in S_n$  is a product of pairwise disjoint cycles  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r$  in  $S_n$ . Suppose that  $\sigma_i = (k_{i1} \cdots k_{i\ell_i}) \in S_n$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \ldots, r\}$ . Then for any  $\tau \in S_n$  we have  $\tau \sigma \tau^{-1} = (\tau(k_{11}) \cdots \tau(k_{1\ell_1})) \circ \cdots \circ (\tau(k_{r1}) \cdots \tau(k_{r\ell_r}))$ . In particular, both  $\sigma$  and  $\tau \sigma \tau^{-1}$  have the same cycle type.

*Proof.* Since  $\tau \sigma \tau^{-1} = (\tau \sigma_1 \tau^{-1}) \circ \cdots \circ (\tau \sigma_r \tau^{-1})$ , the result follows from Proposition 2.2.8.

**Proposition 2.2.10.** *Let*  $\sigma \in S_n$  *be a cycle. Then*  $\sigma$  *is a* r *cycle if and only if*  $\operatorname{ord}(\sigma) = r$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma=(k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r)$ , for some distinct elements  $k_1,\ldots,k_r\in J_n$ . Then for any  $k\in J_n\setminus\{k_1,\ldots,k_r\}$  we have  $\sigma(k)=k$ . It follows from the definition of the cyclic expression of  $\sigma$  given in (2.2.1) that  $\sigma^i(k_1)=k_{i+1}$ , for all  $i\in\{1,\ldots,k-1\}$  and  $\sigma^r(k_1)=k_1$ . In general, for any  $k_i$  with  $1\le i\le r$  we have  $\sigma^{r-i}(k_i)=k_r$  and so  $\sigma^{r-i+1}(k_i)=k_1$ . Therefore,  $\sigma^{r-i+\ell}(k_i)=k_\ell$  for all  $\ell\in\{1,\ldots,r-1\}$ , and hence  $\sigma^r(k_i)=k_i$ , for all  $i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . Combining all these, we have  $\sigma^r(k)=k_r$  for all  $k\in J_n$ . In other words,  $\sigma^r=e$ , where e is the identity element in  $S_n$ . Since  $\sigma^s(k_1)=k_{s+1}$ , for all  $s\in\{1,\ldots,r-1\}$  (see (2.2.1)), we conclude that r is the smallest positive integer such that  $\sigma^r=e$  in  $S_n$ . Therefore,  $\operatorname{ord}(\sigma)=r$ . Conversely, suppose that  $\sigma$  is a t cycle with  $\operatorname{ord}(\sigma)=r$ . But then as shown above  $\operatorname{ord}(\sigma)=t$ , and hence t=r.

**Exercise 2.2.11.** Show that the number of distinct r cycles in  $S_n$  is  $\frac{n!}{r(n-r)!}$ 

*Solution:* Note that, we can choose a r cycle from  $S_n$  in

$${}^{n}C_{r} = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

ways. Fix a *r*-cycle  $\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r) \in S_n$ . Note that, the cycles

$$(k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r)$$
 and  $(k_2 \ k_3 \ \cdots \ k_r \ k_1)$ 

represents the same element  $\sigma \in S_n$ . Note that, given any two permutations (bijective maps)

$$\phi, \psi : \{2, 3, \dots, r\} \to \{2, 3, \dots, r\},\$$

two r cycles (note that  $k_1$  is fixed!)

$$(k_1 \ k_{\phi(2)} \ \cdots \ k_{\phi(r)})$$
 and  $(k_1 \ k_{\psi(2)} \ \cdots \ k_{\psi(r)})$ 

represents the same element of  $S_n$  if and only if  $\phi=\psi$ . Since there are (r-1)! number of distinct bijective maps  $\{2,3,\ldots,r\}\to\{2,3,\ldots,r\}$  (verify!), fixing  $k_1$  in one choice of r cycle  $(k_1\ k_2\ \cdots\ k_r)$  in  $S_n$ , considering all permutations of the remaining (r-1) entries  $k_2,\ldots,k_r$ , we get (r-1)! number of distinct r cycles in  $S_n$ . Therefore, the total number of distinct r cycles in  $S_n$  is precisely

$$(r-1)! \cdot \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!} = \frac{n!}{r(n-r)!}.$$

This completes the proof.

**Definition 2.2.12.** Two cycles  $\sigma = (i_1 \ i_2 \cdots i_r)$  and  $\tau = (j_1 \ j_2 \cdots j_s)$  in  $S_n$  are said to be disjoint if  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_r\} \cap \{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_s\} = \emptyset$ .

**Proposition 2.2.13.** *If*  $\sigma$  *and*  $\tau$  *are disjoint cycles in*  $S_n$ , *show that*  $\sigma \circ \tau = \tau \circ \sigma$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma=(i_1\ i_2\cdots i_r)$  and  $\tau=(j_1\ j_2\cdots j_s)$  be two disjoint cycles in  $S_n$ . Let  $k\in J_n$  be arbitrary. If  $k\notin\{i_1,\ldots,i_r\}\cup\{j_1,\ldots,j_s\}$ , then  $\sigma(k)=k=\tau(k)$  and hence  $(\sigma\tau)(k)=(\tau\sigma)(k)$  in this case. Suppose that  $k\in\{i_1,\ldots,i_r\}$ . Then  $\sigma(k)\in\{i_1,\ldots,i_r\}$  and  $k\notin\{j_1,\ldots,j_s\}$  together gives  $\tau\sigma(k)=\sigma(k)=\sigma\tau(k)$ . Interchanging the roles of  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  we see that  $\tau\sigma(k)=\sigma(k)=\sigma\tau(k)$  holds for the case  $k\in\{j_1,\ldots,j_s\}$ . Therefore,  $\sigma\tau=\tau\sigma$ .

**Lemma 2.2.14.** For  $n \geq 2$ , any non-identity element of  $S_n$  can be uniquely written as a product of disjoint cycles of length at least 2. This expression is unique up to ordering of factors.

*Proof.* For n=2,  $S_2$  has only one non-identity element, which is a 2-cycle  $(1\ 2)$ . Assume that  $n\geq 3$  and the result is true for any non-identity element of  $S_r$  for  $2\leq r< n$ . Let  $\sigma\in S_n$  be a non-identity element. Since  $\{\sigma^i(1):i\in\mathbb{N}\}\subseteq J_n$  and  $J_n$  is a finite set, there exists distinct

2.2. Cycles 25

integers  $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\sigma^i(1) = \sigma^j(1)$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that  $i - j \ge 1$ . Then  $\sigma^{i-j}(1) = 1$ . Then

$$\{i \in \mathbb{N} : \sigma^i(1) = 1\}$$

is a non-empty subset of  $\mathbb{N}$ , and hence it has a least element, say r. Then all the elements in

$$A := \{1, \sigma(1), \sigma^2(1), \dots, \sigma^{r-1}(1)\}\$$

are all distinct, and defines an r-cycle

$$\tau := (1 \ \sigma(1) \ \sigma^2(1) \ \cdots \ \sigma^{r-1}(1))$$

in  $S_n$ . Let  $B:=J_n\setminus A$ . In cases  $\sigma|_B$  is the identity map of B onto itself or  $B=\emptyset$ , we have  $\tau=\sigma$  and so  $\sigma$  is a cycle in  $S_n$ . Assume that  $B\neq\emptyset$  and  $\pi:=\sigma|_B$  is not the identity map. Then  $\pi$  is a non-identity element of  $S_k$ , where  $2\leq k:=|B|< n$ . Then by induction hypothesis  $\pi=\pi_1\cdots\pi_\ell$  is a finite product of disjoint cycles  $\pi_1,\ldots,\pi_\ell$  of lengths at least 2 in  $S_k$ . Then for each  $i\in\{1,\ldots,\ell\}$  we define  $\sigma_i\in S_n$  by setting

$$\sigma_i(a) = \begin{cases} \pi_i(a), & \text{if} \quad a \in B, \\ a, & \text{if} \quad a \in J_n \setminus B. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_\ell, \tau$  are pairwise disjoint cycles in  $S_n$  and that  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_\ell \tau$ .

For the uniqueness part, let  $\sigma=\sigma_1\cdots\sigma_r=\tau_1\cdots\tau_s$  be two decomposition of  $\sigma$  into product of disjoint cycles of lengths  $\geq 2$  in  $S_n$ . We need to show that r=s, and there is a permutation  $\delta\in S_r$  such that  $\sigma_i=\tau_{\delta(i)}$ , for all  $i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . Suppose that  $\sigma_i=(k_1\ k_2\ \cdots\ k_t)$  with  $t\geq 2$ . Then  $\sigma(k_1)\neq k_1$ . Since  $\tau_1,\ldots,\tau_r$  are pairwise disjoint cycles of lengths  $\geq 2$  in  $S_n$ , there is a unique element, say  $\delta(i)\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$  such that  $\tau_{\delta(i)}(k_1)\neq k_1$ . By reordering, if required, we may write  $\tau_{\delta(i)}=(k_1\ v_2\ \cdots\ v_u)$ . Then we have

If t < u, then  $k_1 = \sigma_i(k_t) = \sigma(k_t) = \sigma(v_t) = v_{t+1}$ , which is a contradiction. Therefore, t = u and hence  $\sigma_i = \tau_{\delta(i)}$ . Hence the result follows by induction on r.

**Definition 2.2.15** (Cycle type). Given  $\sigma \in S_n$ , by Lemma 2.2.14 there exists a unique finite set of pairwise disjoint cycles  $\{\sigma_1,\ldots,\sigma_r\}$  in  $S_n$  such that  $\sigma=\sigma_1\circ\cdots\circ\sigma_r$ . Since disjoint cycles commutes by Proposition 2.2.13, by reindexing  $\sigma_j$ 's, if required, we may assume that  $n_1\geq\ldots\geq n_r$ , where  $n_j=\operatorname{length}(\sigma_j)$ , for all  $j\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . Since  $\sigma_1,\ldots,\sigma_r$  are pairwise disjoint cycles in  $S_n$ , we have  $\ell+\sum_{j=1}^r n_j=n$ , for some non-negative integer  $\ell$ . If  $\ell=0$ , then the sequence  $(n_1,\ldots,n_r)$  is called the *cycle type* of  $\sigma$ , and if  $\ell>0$ , then the sequence  $(n_1,\ldots,n_r,f_1,\ldots,f_\ell)$ , where  $f_1=\ldots=f_\ell=1$ , is called the cycle type of  $\sigma$ .

**Example 2.2.16.** (i) The cycle type of  $\sigma := (1 \ 2) \circ (3 \ 6) \circ (4 \ 5 \ 7) \in S_7$  is (3, 2, 2).

- (ii) The cycle type of  $\tau := (1 \ 4 \ 3) \circ (2 \ 5) \in S_7$  is (3, 2, 1, 1).
- (iii) The cycle type of  $\delta := (1 \ 3 \ 5) \circ (2 \ 4 \ 7) \in S_6$  is (3, 3, 1).

**Definition 2.2.17.** Two permutations  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  in  $S_n$  are said to be *conjugate* in  $S_n$  if there exists  $\delta \in S_n$  such that  $\tau = \delta \circ \sigma \circ \delta^{-1}$ .

**Theorem 2.2.18.** Two elements  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$  are conjugate if and only if they have the same cycle type.

Proof. Conjugate permutations in  $S_n$  have the same cycle type by Corollary 2.2.9. Conversely suppose that  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$  have the same cycle type, say  $(n_1, \ldots, n_r, f_1, \ldots, f_\ell)$ , where  $n_1 \geq \cdots \geq n_r \geq 2$  and  $f_1 = \cdots = f_\ell = 1$ ,  $\ell \geq 0$  and that  $\sum\limits_{j=1}^r n_j + \ell = n$ . Let  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_r$  and  $\tau = \tau_1 \circ \cdots \circ \tau_r$ , where  $\sigma_i, \tau_j$  are cycles in  $S_n$  of lengths  $n_i$  and  $n_j$ , respectively. Suppose that  $\sigma_i = (a_{i1} \cdots a_{in_i})$  and  $\tau_j = (b_{j1} \cdots b_{jn_j})$ . If  $\ell > 0$ , then we write the subset  $I_n \setminus \{a_{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq r, 1 \leq j \leq n_i\}$  as  $\{a_1, \ldots, a_\ell\}$ . Then  $I_n$  is a disjoint union of the subsets  $\{a_{11}, \ldots, a_{1n_1}\}, \ldots, \{a_{r1}, \ldots, a_{rn_r}\}, \{a_1, \ldots, a_\ell\}$ . Similarly if we write the subset  $I_n \setminus \{b_{ij} : 1 \leq i \leq r, 1 \leq j \leq n_i\}$  as  $\{b_1, \ldots, b_\ell\}$ , then  $I_n$  is a disjoint union of the subsets  $\{b_{11}, \ldots, b_{1n_1}\}, \ldots, \{b_{r1}, \ldots, b_{rn_r}\}, \{b_1, \ldots, b_\ell\}$ . Then we define a map  $\delta : I_n \to I_n$  by sending  $a_{ij}$  to  $b_{ij}$ , for all  $(i,j) \in \{1, \ldots, r\} \times \{1, \ldots, n_i\}$ , and by sending  $a_k$  to  $b_k$ , for all  $k \in \{1, \ldots, \ell\}$ , if  $\ell > 0$ . Clearly  $\delta$  is a bijective map, and hence is an element of  $S_n$ . Then Proposition 2.2.8 ensures that  $\delta \sigma_i \delta^{-1} = \tau_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \ldots, r\}$ . Then we have

$$\delta\sigma\delta^{-1} = \delta(\sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_r)\delta^{-1}$$

$$= (\delta\sigma_1\delta^{-1})\cdots(\delta\sigma_r\delta^{-1})$$

$$= \tau_1 \cdots \tau_r$$

$$= \tau$$

This completes the proof.

**Exercise 2.2.19.** Find the number of elements of order 2 and 3 in  $S_4$ . Show that  $S_4$  has no element of order 4.

**Corollary 2.2.20.** For  $n \geq 2$ , every element of  $S_n$  can be written as a finite product of transpositions.

*Proof.* In view of above Lemma 2.2.14 it suffices to show that every cycle of  $S_n$  is a product of transpositions. Clearly the identity element  $e \in S_n$  can be written as  $e = (1 \ 2)(1 \ 2)$ . If  $\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r)$  is an r-cycle,  $r \ge 2$ , in  $S_n$ , then we can rewrite it as

$$\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r) = (k_1 \ k_r)(k_1 \ k_{r-1})\cdots(k_1 \ k_2).$$

Hence the result follows.

#### 2.3 Even and odd permutations

Note that decompositions of  $\sigma \in S_n$  into a finite product of transpositions is not unique. For example, when  $n \geq 3$  we have  $e = (1 \ 2)(1 \ 2) = (1 \ 3)(1 \ 3)$ . However, we shall see shortly that the number of transpositions appearing in such a product expression for  $\sigma \in S_n$  is either odd or even, but cannot be both in two such decompositions.

**Lemma 2.3.1.** Fix an integer  $n \ge 2$ , and consider the action of a permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$  on the formal product  $\chi := \prod_{1 \le i < j \le n} (x_i - x_j)$  given by

$$\sigma(\chi) := \prod_{1 \le i < j \le n} (x_{\sigma(i)} - x_{\sigma(j)}).$$

If  $\sigma \in S_n$  is a 2-cycle (transposition), then  $\sigma(\chi) = -\chi$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\sigma \in S_n$  is a 2-cycle, there exists a unique subset  $\{p,q\} \subseteq J_n$  with p < q such that  $\sigma = (p \ q)$ . Then  $\sigma(k) = k, \ \forall \ k \in J_n \setminus \{p,q\}$ . Consider the factor  $(x_i - x_j)$  of  $\chi$  with  $1 \le i < j \le n$ . We have the following situations:

(a) If 
$$\{i, j\} = \{p, q\}$$
, then  $\sigma(x_i - x_j) = x_{\sigma(i)} - x_{\sigma(j)} = -(x_i - x_j)$ .

- (b) If  $\{i, j\} \cap \{p, q\} = \emptyset$ , then  $\sigma(x_i x_j) = x_{\sigma(i)} x_{\sigma(j)} = (x_i x_j)$ .
- (c) If  $\{i, j\} \cap \{p, q\}$  is singleton set, then we have the following subcases.

I. If 
$$t , then  $\sigma((x_t - x_p)(x_t - x_q)) = (x_{\sigma(t)} - x_{\sigma(p)})(x_{\sigma(t)} - x_{\sigma(q)}) = (x_t - x_q)(x_t - x_p)$ .$$

II. If 
$$p < t < q$$
, then  $\sigma((x_p - x_t)(x_t - x_q)) = (x_{\sigma(p)} - x_{\sigma(t)})(x_{\sigma(t)} - x_{\sigma(q)}) = (x_q - x_t)(x_p - x_t)$ .

III. If 
$$p < q < t$$
, then  $\sigma((x_p - x_t)(x_q - x_t)) = (x_{\sigma(p)} - x_{\sigma(t)})(x_{\sigma(q)} - x_{\sigma(t)}) = (x_q - x_t)(x_p - x_t)$ .

Therefore, in the above three subcases the product  $(x_t - x_p)(x_t - x_q)$  remains fixed under the action of  $\sigma$ .

From these it immediately follows that  $\sigma(\chi) = -\chi$ , for all 2-cycle  $\sigma \in S_n$ .

**Corollary 2.3.2.** Fix an integer  $n \ge 2$ , and let  $\sigma \in S_n$ . If  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_r = \tau_1 \cdots \tau_s$ , where  $\sigma_i, \tau_j$  are all transpositions in  $S_n$ , then both r and s are either even or odd.

*Proof.* Consider the formal product  $\chi:=\prod_{1\leq i< j\leq n}(x_i-x_j)$ . Then  $\sigma(\chi)=(\sigma_1\circ\cdots\circ\sigma_r)(\chi)=(-1)^r\chi$  and  $\sigma(\chi)=(\tau_1\circ\cdots\circ\tau_s)(\chi)=(-1)^s\chi$  together implies that  $(-1)^r=(-1)^s$ , and hence both r and s are either even or odd.

**Definition 2.3.3.** A permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$  is called *even* (respectively, *odd*) if  $\sigma$  can be written as a product of even (respectively, odd) number of transpositions in  $S_n$ .

Note that given a permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$ , if  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_r$ , where  $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r$  are 2-cycles in  $S_n$ , then by Corollary 2.3.2 we see that  $\sigma$  is even if and only if  $(-1)^r = 1$ . Thus we have a well-defined map  $\operatorname{sgn}: S_n \to \{1, -1\}$  given by sending  $\sigma \in S_n$  to  $(-1)^r$ , where r is a number of 2-cycles appearing in the decomposition of  $\sigma$  into a product of 2-cycles in  $S_n$ . In other words,

(2.3.4) 
$$\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) = \begin{cases} -1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is odd,} \\ 1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is even,} \end{cases}$$

The number  $sgn(\sigma)$  is called the *signature* of the permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$ .

**Proposition 2.3.5.** An r-cycle  $\sigma \in S_n$  is even if and only if r is odd.

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r)$  be an r-cycle in  $S_n$ . Then we can write it as a product  $\sigma = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \cdots \ k_r) = (k_1 \ k_r)(k_1 \ k_{r-1})\cdots(k_1 \ k_2)$  of r-1 number of transpositions in  $S_n$ . Hence the result follows.

**Exercise 2.3.6.** Express the following permutations as product of disjoint cycles, and then express them as a product of transpositions. Determine if they are even or odd permutations.

(i) 
$$\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 2 & 3 & 8 & 5 & 6 & 4 & 7 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in S_8$$
.

Answer: Note that.

$$\sigma = (1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 8) \circ (4 \ 5 \ 6)$$
  
= (1 \ 8) \circ (1 \ 3) \circ (1 \ 2) \circ (4 \ 6) \circ (4 \ 5).

Since  $\sigma$  is a product of 5 transpositions in  $S_8$ , we conclude that  $\sigma$  is odd.

(ii) 
$$\tau = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 5 & 1 & 4 & 2 & 3 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \in S_6.$$

(iii) 
$$\pi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 & 1 & 3 & 7 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \in S_7.$$

**Exercise 2.3.7.** If  $\sigma \in S_5$  has order 3, show that  $\sigma$  is a 3-cycle. More generally, if  $\sigma \in S_n$  has order p > 0, a prime number, such that n < 2p, show that  $\sigma$  is a p-cycle in  $S_n$ .

#### 2.4 Alternating subgroup $A_n$

**Proposition 2.4.1.** Let  $A_n = \{ \sigma \in S_n : \sigma \text{ is even} \}$  be the set of all even permutations in  $S_n$ . Then  $A_n$  is a subgroup of  $S_n$ , known as the alternating group on  $J_n$ .

*Proof.* Since  $e=(1\ 2)\circ(1\ 2)$ , we see that  $e\in A_n$ . Thus  $A_n$  is a non-empty subset of  $S_n$ . Let  $\sigma,\tau\in A_n$  be arbitrary. Suppose that  $\tau=\tau_1\circ\cdots\circ\tau_{2r}$ , where  $\tau_1,\ldots,\tau_{2r}$  are transpositions in  $S_n$ . Since transpositions are elements of order 2 (see Proposition 2.2.10), they are self inverse in  $S_n$ . Now it follows from Exercise 1.1.11 (ii) that

$$\tau^{-1} = \tau_{2r} \circ \cdots \circ \tau_1.$$

Therefore,  $\tau^{-1}$  is also an even permutation. Since  $\sigma$  and  $\tau^{-1}$  are even, their product  $\sigma \circ \tau^{-1} \in A_n$ . Therefore,  $A_n$  is a subgroup of  $S_n$  by Lemma 1.2.8.

**Remark 2.4.2.** Assume that  $n \geq 3$ . Note that, any transposition  $(i \ j) \in S_n$ , with  $i \neq 1$  and  $j \neq 1$ , can be written as

$$(i \ j) = (1 \ i) \circ (1 \ j) \circ (1 \ i).$$

Again  $(1 \ i) \circ (1 \ j) = (1 \ j \ i)$ . Since each element of  $A_n$  are product of even number of transpositions, using above two observations, one can write each element of  $A_n$  as product of 3 cycles in  $S_n$ .

**Exercise 2.4.3.** For all  $n \geq 3$ , show that  $A_n$  is generated by 3-cycles.

Solution: Note that any 3-cycle is an even permutation by Proposition 2.3.5, and hence is in  $A_n$ . Therefore, the subgroup of  $S_n$  generated by all 3-cycles is a subgroup of  $A_n$ . For the converse part, we show that any even permutation can be written as product of 3-cycles. Note that any element of  $A_n$  is a product of even number of 2-cycles in  $S_n$ . Let  $\sigma=(i\ j)$  and  $\tau=(k\ \ell)$  be two 2-cycles in  $S_n$ . If  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  are not disjoint, then we may assume that j=k. Then  $\sigma\circ\tau=(i\ j)(j\ \ell)=(i\ j\ \ell)$  is a 3-cycle. If  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  are disjoint, then

$$\begin{split} \sigma \circ \tau &= (i \ j)(k \ \ell) \\ &= (i \ j)(j \ k)(j \ k)(k \ \ell) \\ &= (i \ j \ k)(j \ k \ \ell), \end{split}$$

where the last equality is due to the first case. Hence the result follows.

**Exercise 2.4.4.** Show that  $|A_n| = n!/2$ .

Solution: Let  $\{\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_r\}$  and  $\{\tau_1, \ldots, \tau_s\}$  be the set of all even permutations and the set of all odd permutations in  $S_n$ , respectively. Since r+s=n!, it suffices to show that r=s. Fix a transposition  $\pi \in S_n$ . Then  $\pi\sigma_1, \ldots, \pi\sigma_r$  are all distinct (verify) odd permutations in  $S_n$ , and hence  $r \leq s$ . Similarly  $s \leq r$ , and hence r=s, as required.

**Exercise 2.4.5.** Determine the groups  $A_3$  and  $A_4$ .

**Exercise 2.4.6.** Given  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$ , show that  $[\sigma, \tau] := \sigma \circ \tau \circ \sigma^{-1} \circ \tau^{-1} \in A_n$ . The element  $[\sigma, \tau]$  is called the *commutator of*  $\sigma$  *and*  $\tau$  in  $S_n$ . Deduce that  $A_n$  is generated by  $\{[\sigma, \tau] : \sigma, \tau \in S_n\}$ , for all  $n \ge 3$ .

**Exercise 2.4.7.** Show that  $S_n$  is generated by  $\{(1\ 2), (1\ 2\ \cdots\ n)\}$ , for all  $n \ge 3$ .

**Example 2.4.8** (Dihedral group  $D_n$ ). Consider a regular n-gon in the plane  $\mathbb{R}^2$  whose vertices are labelled as  $1, 2, 3, \ldots, n$  in clockwise order. Let  $D_n$  be the set of all symmetries of this regular n-gon given by the following operations and their finite compositions:

a := The rotations about its centre through the angles  $2\pi/n$ , and

b:= The reflections along the vertical straight line passing through the centre of the regular  $n\text{-}\mathrm{gon}.$ 

Note that ord(a) = n, ord(b) = 2 and that  $a^{n-1}b = ba$ . Therefore, the group generated by all such symmetries of the regular n-gon can be expressed in terms of generators and relations as

$$D_n := \langle a, b \mid \operatorname{ord}(a) = n, \operatorname{ord}(b) = 2, \text{ and } a^{n-1}b = ba \rangle.$$

This group is called the *dihedral group* of degree n. Note that  $D_n$  is a non-commutative finite group of order 2n and its elements can be expressed as

$$D_n = \{e, a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^{n-1}, b, ba, ba^2, ba^3, \dots, ba^{n-1}\}.$$

Note that each element of  $D_n$  is given by a bijection of the set  $J_n := \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  onto itself, and hence is a permutation on  $J_n$ . However, not all permutations of the set  $J_n$  corresponds to a symmetry of a regular n-gon as described above (see Exercise 2.4.9 below). We can define a binary operation on  $D_n$  by composition of bijective maps. Then it is easy to check using Lemma 1.2.8 that  $D_n$  is a subgroup of  $S_n$ . The group  $D_n$  is called the *Dihedral group* of degree n. It is a finite group of order 2n which is non-commutative for  $n \geq 3$ .

**Exercise 2.4.9.** Show that  $D_3 = S_3$ , and  $D_n$  is a proper subgroup of  $S_n$ , for all  $n \ge 4$ .

**Exercise 2.4.10.** Let G be the subgroup of  $S_4$  generated by the cycles

$$a := (1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4) \text{ and } b := (2 \ 4)$$

in  $S_4$ . Show that G is a dihedral group of degree 4.

# **Chapter 3**

# **Group Homomorphism**

## 3.1 Definition and examples

A group homomorphism is a map from a group G into another group H that respects the binary operations on them. Here is a formal definition.

**Definition 3.1.1.** Let G and H be two groups. A *group homomorphism* from (G,\*) into  $(H,\star)$  is a map  $f:G\to H$  satisfying  $f(a*b)=f(a)\star f(b)$ , for all  $a,b\in G$ .

**Example 3.1.2.** (i) For any group G, the constant map  $c_e: G \to G$ , which sends all points of G to the neutral element  $e \in G$ , is a group homomorphism, called the *trivial group homomorphism* of G.

(ii) Let H be a subgroup of a group G. Then the set theoretic inclusion map  $H \hookrightarrow G$  is a group homomorphism. In particular, for any group G, the identity map

$$\mathrm{Id}_G:G\to G,\ a\mapsto a$$

is a group homomorphism.

(iii) Fix an integer m, and define a function

$$\varphi_m: \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}, \ n \longmapsto mn, \ \forall \ n \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Then  $\varphi_m(n_1+n_2)=m(n_1+n_2)=mn_1+mn_2=\varphi_m(n_1)+\varphi_m(n_2)$ , for all  $n_1,n_2\in\mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore,  $\varphi_m$  is a group homomorphism. Note that,  $\varphi_m$  is always injective, and it is surjective only for  $m\in\{1,-1\}$ .

(iv) Let  $\mathbb{R}^* := \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ , and consider the exponential map

$$f: \mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^*, \ x \longmapsto e^x, \ \forall \ x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Since  $f(a+b)=e^{a+b}=e^a\cdot e^b=f(a)\cdot f(b)$ , for all  $a,b\in\mathbb{R}$ , the map f is a group homomorphism from  $(\mathbb{R},+)$  into  $(\mathbb{R}^*,\cdot)$ . Verify that f is injective.

- (v) The map  $f: \mathbb{R} \to S^1 := \{z \in \mathbb{C}^* : |z| = 1\}$  defined by  $f(t) = e^{2\pi i t}, \ \forall \ t \in \mathbb{R}$  is a surjective group homomorphism. Is it injective?
- (vi) Let

$$\phi: \mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R}), \ a \longmapsto \begin{pmatrix} 1 & a \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \ \forall \ a \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Verify that  $\phi$  is an injective group homomorphism from the additive group  $\mathbb{R}$  into the multiplicative group  $\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{R})$ .

(vii) Fix an integer  $n \ge 2$ , and consider the map

$$\psi: \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_n, \ a \longmapsto [a], \ \forall \ a \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Verify that  $\psi$  is a surjective group homomorphism.

(viii) Fix a prime number p > 0, and let  $\mathbf{F} : \mathbb{Z}_p \to \mathbb{Z}_p$  be the map defined by  $\mathbf{F}(a) = a^p$ , for all  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Since any multiple of p is 0 in  $\mathbb{Z}_p$ , using binomial expansion we have

$$\mathbf{F}(a+b) = (a+b)^p = \sum_{j=0}^p \binom{p}{j} a^{p-j} b^j = a^p + b^p.$$

Therefore, **F** is a group homomorphism, known as the *Frobenius endomorphism*.

(ix) Fix an integer  $n \ge 1$ , and let  $f : GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}^*$  be the map defined by

$$f(A) = \det(A), \ \forall \ A \in \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}).$$

Verify that f is a group homomorphism.

- (x) Let m, n > 1 be integers such that  $n \mid m$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Verify that the map  $\varphi : \mathbb{Z}_m \to \mathbb{Z}_n$  defined by sending  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_m$  to  $[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n$  is a well-defined map that is a group homomorphism.
- (xi) Let G be a group. For each  $a \in G$ , the map  $\varphi_a : G \to G$  defined by  $\varphi_a(b) = aba^{-1}$ ,  $\forall b \in G$ , is a group homomorphism.

**Exercise 3.1.3.** For each integer  $n \ge 1$ , let  $J_n := \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : 1 \le k \le n\}$ . For each  $\sigma \in S_n$ , consider the map  $\widetilde{\sigma} : J_{n+1} \to J_{n+1}$  defined by

$$\widetilde{\sigma}(k) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \sigma(k), & \text{if} \quad 1 \le k \le n, \\ n+1, & \text{if} \quad k = n+1. \end{array} \right.$$

Note that,  $\widetilde{\sigma}$  is a bijective map, and hence is an element of  $S_{n+1}$ . Show that the map

$$f: S_n \to S_{n+1}, \ \sigma \mapsto \widetilde{\sigma},$$

is an injective group homomorphism. Thus, we can identify  $S_n$  as a subgroup of  $S_{n+1}$ .

**Lemma 3.1.4.** Let  $n \ge 2$  be an integer. Then the map  $sgn : S_n \to \{1, -1\}$  defined by sending  $\sigma \in S_n$  to

$$\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} -1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is odd}, \\ 1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is even}, \end{array} \right.$$

is a group homomorphism, called the signature homomorphism for  $S_n$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$  be arbitrary. Let  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_r$  and  $\tau = \tau_1 \circ \cdots \circ \tau_s$ , where  $\sigma_i, \tau_j$  are all 2-cycles in  $S_n$ . Then  $\sigma \circ \tau = \sigma_1 \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_r \circ \tau_1 \circ \cdots \circ \tau_s$ , and hence  $\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma \circ \tau) = (-1)^{r+s} = (-1)^r (-1)^s = \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \operatorname{sgn}(\tau)$ .

## 3.2 Basic properties

**Proposition 3.2.1.** Let  $f: G \to H$  be a group homomorphism. Let  $e_G \in G$  and  $e_H \in H$  be the neutral elements of G and H, respectively. Then we have the following.

(i) 
$$f(e_G) = e_H$$
.

(ii) 
$$f(a^{-1}) = (f(a))^{-1}$$
, for all  $a \in G$ .

(iii) If  $\operatorname{ord}(a) < \infty$ , then  $\operatorname{ord}(f(a)) \mid \operatorname{ord}(a)$ .

*Proof.* (i) Since  $f(e_G)f(e_G) = f(e_G \cdot e_G) = f(e_G) = f(e_G) \cdot e_H$ , applying cancellation law we have  $f(e_G) = e_H$ . The second statement follows immediately.

(ii) Since f is a group homomorphism, for any  $a \in G$ , we have

$$f(a)f(a^{-1}) = f(a \cdot a^{-1}) = f(e_G) = e_H$$
  
and  $f(a^{-1})f(a) = f(a^{-1} \cdot a) = f(e_G) = e_H$ ,

and hence  $f(a^{-1}) = (f(a))^{-1}$ .

(iii) Let  $n := \operatorname{ord}(a) < \infty$ . Since  $f(a)^n = f(a^n) = f(e_G) = e_H$ , it follows from Exercise 1.2.32 (i) that  $\operatorname{ord}(f(a)) \mid n$ .

**Exercise 3.2.2.** Let G and H be two groups. Show that there is a unique constant group homomorphism from G to H.

**Proposition 3.2.3.** *Let*  $f: G \to H$  *be a group homomorphism.* 

- (i) For any subgroup G' of G, its image  $f(G') := \{f(a) : a \in G'\}$  is a subgroup of H. Moreover, if G' is commutative, so is f(G').
- (ii) For any subgroup H' of H, its inverse image  $f^{-1}(H') := \{a \in G : f(a) \in H'\}$  is a subgroup of G.
- *Proof.* (i) Clearly,  $f(G') \neq \emptyset$  as  $e \in G'$ . For  $h_1, h_2 \in f(G')$ , we have  $h_1 = f(a_1)$  and  $h_2 = f(a_2)$ , for some  $a_1, a_2 \in G'$ . Since  $a_1a_2^{-1} \in G'$ , we have  $h_1h_2^{-1} = f(a_1)f(a_2)^{-1} = f(a_1a_2^{-1}) \in f(G')$ . If G' is commutative, we have f(a)f(b) = f(ab) = f(ba) = f(b)f(a), for all  $a, b \in G'$ . Hence the result follows.
- (ii) Let  $e_G \in G$  and  $e_H \in H$  be the neutral elements of G and H, respectively. Since  $f(e_G) = e_H$  by Proposition 3.2.1 (i), we have  $e_G \in f^{-1}(H')$ . Since H' is a subgroup of H, for any  $a,b \in f^{-1}(H')$  we have  $f(ab^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)^{-1} \in H'$ , and hence  $ab^{-1} \in f^{-1}(H')$ . Thus  $f^{-1}(H')$  is a subgroup of G.

**Proposition 3.2.4.** Composition of group homomorphisms is a group homomorphism.

*Proof.* Let  $f: G_1 \to G_2$  and  $g: G_2 \to G_3$  be two group homomorphisms. Since  $(g \circ f)(ab) = g(f(ab)) = g(f(a)f(b)) = g(f(a))g(f(b)) = (g \circ f)(a)(g \circ f)(b)$ , for all  $a, b \in G_1$ , the result follows.

Given any two groups G and H, we denote by  $\operatorname{Hom}(G,H)$  the set of all group homomorphisms from G into H.

**Exercise 3.2.5.** Let G and H be two groups. Show that the projection maps  $\pi_G: G \times H \to G$  and  $\pi_H: G \times H \to H$  defined by

$$\pi_G(a,b) = a$$
 and  $\pi_H(a,b) = b$ ,  $\forall (a,b) \in G \times H$ ,

are surjective group homomorphisms.

**Proposition 3.2.6.** *Let* G, H *and* K *be groups. Then there is a natural bijective map from*  $\operatorname{Hom}(G, H \times K)$  *onto*  $\operatorname{Hom}(G, H) \times \operatorname{Hom}(G, K)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\pi_H: H\times K\to H$  and  $\pi_K: H\times K\to K$  be the projection maps onto the first and the second factors, respectively (see Exercise 3.2.5). Since both  $\pi_H$  and  $\pi_K$  are group homomorphisms, given any group homomorphism  $f: G\to H\times K$ , we have  $\pi_H\circ f\in \mathrm{Hom}(G,H)$  and  $\pi_K\circ f\in \mathrm{Hom}(G,K)$  by Proposition 5.2.2. Thus we get a map  $\Phi:\mathrm{Hom}(G,H\times K)\to \mathrm{Hom}(G,H)\times \mathrm{Hom}(G,K)$  defined by

$$\Phi(f) = (\pi_H \circ f, \pi_K \circ f), \ \forall \ f \in \text{Hom}(G, H \times K).$$

To show that  $\Phi$  is surjective, given  $f \in \text{Hom}(G, H)$  and  $g \in \text{Hom}(G, K)$ , let  $h : G \to H \times K$  be the map defined by

$$h(a) = (f(a), g(a)), \forall a \in G.$$

Since for given any  $a, b \in G$ , we have

$$h(ab) = (f(ab), g(ab)) = (f(a)f(b), g(a)g(b))$$
$$= (f(a), g(a))(f(b), g(b))$$
$$= h(a)h(b).$$

we see that  $h \in \text{Hom}(G, H \times K)$ . Clearly  $\Phi(h) = (\pi_H \circ h, \pi_K \circ h) = (f, g)$ . Therefore,  $\Phi$  is surjective. To show that  $\Phi$  is injective, note that given any  $f \in \text{Hom}(G, H \times K)$ , we have

$$f(a) = ((\pi_H \circ f)(a), (\pi_K \circ f)(a)), \ \forall \ a \in G.$$

Therefore, if  $\Phi(f) = \Phi(g)$  for some  $f, g \in \text{Hom}(G, H \times K)$ , then the conditions  $\pi_H \circ f = \pi_H \circ g$  and  $\pi_K \circ f = \pi_K \circ g$  together forces that f = g. This completes the proof.

**Definition 3.2.7.** A group homomorphism  $f: G \to H$  is said to be

- (i) a monomorphism if f is injective,
- (ii) an *epimorphism* if f is surjective, and
- (iii) an *isomorphism* if f is bijective.

If  $f: G \to H$  is an isomorphism, we say that G is isomorphic to H, and express it as  $G \cong H$ .

**Lemma 3.2.8.** Being isomorphic groups is an equivalence relation.

*Proof.* Given any group G, the identity map  $\mathrm{Id}_G:G\to G$  given by  $\mathrm{Id}_G(a)=a$ , for all  $a\in G$ , is an isomorphism of groups. Therefore, being isomorphic is a reflexive relation. If  $f:G\to H$  is an isomorphism of groups, then its inverse map  $f^{-1}:H\to G$  is also a group homomorphism (verify!), and hence is an isomorphism because it is bijective. Therefore, being isomorphic groups is a symmetric relation. If  $f:G\to H$  and  $g:H\to K$  be isomorphism of groups. Then the composite map  $g\circ f:G\to K$  is a group homomorphism, which is an isomorphism of groups. Therefore, being isomorphic groups is a transitive relation. Hence the result follows.

**Proposition 3.2.9.** Given a group G, the set Aut(G) consisting of all group isomorphisms from G onto itself is a group with respect to the binary operation given by composition of maps; the group Aut(G) is known as the automorphism group of G.

*Proof.* Since composition of two bijective group homomorphisms is bijective and a group homomorphism, we see that the map

$$G \times G \to G, \ (f,g) \longmapsto f \circ g,$$

is a binary operation on  $\operatorname{Aut}(G)$ . Clearly composition of maps is associative. The identity map  $\operatorname{Id}_G:G\to G$  plays the role of a neutral element in a group. Given  $f\in\operatorname{Aut}(G)$ , its

3.3. Kernel 35

inverse  $f^{-1}: G \to G$  is again a group homomorphism. Indeed, given  $a,b \in G$  there exists unique  $x,y \in G$  such that f(x)=a and f(y)=b. Then we have  $f^{-1}(ab)=f^{-1}(f(x)f(y))=f^{-1}(f(xy))=xy=f^{-1}(a)f^{-1}(y)$ , and hence  $f^{-1}\in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$ . This proves that  $\operatorname{Aut}(G)$  is a group.

**Example 3.2.10.** The complex conjugation map  $z \mapsto \overline{z}$  from the additive group  $\mathbb{C}$  into itself is an automorphism of  $\mathbb{C}$ .

**Exercise 3.2.11.** Show that  $\operatorname{Aut}(K_4)$  is isomorphic to  $S_3$ . (*Hint*: Note that  $K_4 = \{e, a, b, c\}$ , where  $a^2 = b^2 = c^2 = e$  and ab = ba = c, bc = cb = a, ac = ca = b. If  $f \in \operatorname{Aut}(K_4)$ , then f(e) = e and hence  $f|_{\{a,b,c\}}$  is a bijection of the subset  $\{a,b,c\} \subset K_4$  onto itself, producing an element of  $S_3$ . Thus we get a map  $\varphi : \operatorname{Aut}(K_4) \to S_3$ . Verify that  $\varphi$  is a group isomorphism.)

#### 3.3 Kernel

**Definition 3.3.1.** The *kernel* of a group homomorphism  $f: G \to H$  is the subset

$$Ker(f) := \{a \in G : f(a) = e_H\} \subseteq G.$$

Since  $f(e_G) = e_H$  by Proposition 3.2.1 (i), we have  $e_G \in \text{Ker}(f)$ . Therefore, Ker(f) is a non-empty subset of G. Given any two elements  $a, b \in \text{Ker}(f)$  we have  $f(ab^{-1}) = f(a)f(b^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)^{-1} = e_H \cdot e_H^{-1} = e_H$ . Therefore, Ker(f) is a subgroup of G.

**Example 3.3.2.** (i) Fix an integer n and consider the homomorphism

$$f: \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}_n, \ a \mapsto [a].$$

Then  $Ker(f) = \{a \in \mathbb{Z} : n \text{ divides } a\} = n\mathbb{Z}.$ 

(ii) Let  $S^1 := \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| = 1\}$ . Consider the homomorphism

$$f: \mathbb{R} \longrightarrow S^1, \ t \mapsto e^{2\pi\sqrt{-1}t}$$

Then  $Ker(f) = \{t \in \mathbb{R} : e^{2\pi\sqrt{-1}t} = 1\} = \mathbb{Z}.$ 

**Proposition 3.3.3.** A group homomorphism  $f: G \to H$  is injective if and only if Ker(f) is trivial.

*Proof.* If  $\operatorname{Ker}(f) \neq \{e\}$ , clearly f is not injective. Conversely, suppose that  $\operatorname{Ker}(f) = \{e\}$ . If f(a) = f(b), for some  $a, b \in G$  with  $a \neq b$ , then  $ab^{-1} \neq e$  and  $f(ab^{-1}) = f(a)f(b^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)^{-1} = e_H$ , which contradicts our assumption that  $\operatorname{Ker}(f) = \{e\}$ . This completes the proof.

**Proposition 3.3.4.** Any infinite cyclic group is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $G = \langle a \rangle$  be an infinite cyclic group. Define a map  $f : \mathbb{Z} \to G$  by  $f(n) = a^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Since

$$f(n+m) = a^{n+m} = a^n a^m = f(n)f(m), \ \forall \ m, n \in \mathbb{Z},$$

the map f is a group homomorphism. Since G is infinite, we have  $a^n \neq e, \ \forall \ n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ . Therefore,  $\mathrm{Ker}(f) = \{e\}$ , and so f is injective. Clearly f is surjective, and hence is an isomorphism.  $\Box$ 

**Proposition 3.3.5.** Let G be a cyclic group generated by  $a \in G$ . A homomorphism  $f: G \to G$  is an automorphism of G if and only if f(a) is a generator of G.

*Proof.* Let  $f:G\to G$  be an automorphism of G. Let b=f(a). Let  $x\in G$  be arbitrary. Since f is surjective, there exists  $y\in G$  such that f(y)=x. Since  $G=\langle a\rangle$ , we have  $y=a^n$ , for some  $n\in\mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $x=f(y)=f(a^n)=[f(a)]^n=b^n\in\langle b\rangle$ . This shows that  $G=\langle b\rangle$ , and hence b is a generator of G. Conversely if  $f:G\to G$  is a homomorphism such that f(a) generates G, then G is surjective. If G is finite, we must have G is bijective. If G is not finite, then G has only two generators, namely G and G is Proposition 1.3.15, and hence G must be either G or the map given by sending G to G to G. In both cases, G is injective, and hence is in G.

**Theorem 3.3.6** (Cayley). *Every group is a subgroup of a symmetric group.* 

*Proof.* Let G be a group. Let S(G) be the symmetric group on G; its elements are all bijective maps from G onto itself and the group operation is given by composition of bijective maps. Define a map

$$\varphi: G \longrightarrow S(G)$$

by sending an element  $a \in G$  to the map

$$\varphi_a: G \to G, \ g \mapsto ag,$$

which is bijective (verify!), and hence is an element of S(G). Then given any  $g \in G$  we have

$$\varphi(ab)(g) = \varphi_{ab}(g)$$

$$= (ab)g = a(bg)$$

$$= (\varphi_a \circ \varphi_b)(g)$$

$$= (\varphi(a) \circ \varphi(b))(g),$$

and hence  $\varphi$  is a group homomorphism. Note that  $\varphi_a = \operatorname{Id}_G$  if and only if a = e in G (verify!). Therefore,  $\varphi$  is an injective group homomorphism, and hence we can identify G with the subgroup  $\varphi(G)$  of the symmetric group S(G).

# **Chapter 4**

# **Quotient Groups**

## 4.1 What is a quotient group?

Let G be a group, and H a subgroup of G. In this section we introduce the notion of a quotient group of G by H and prove its uniqueness. In the process of construction of quotient, we identify a class of subsets of G, known as *cosets* of H in G, and discuss their basic properties with some applications. An explicit construction of quotient group will appear in the next section

**Definition 4.1.1** (Quotient Group). Let H be a subgroup of a group G. The *quotient* of G by H is a pair  $(Q, \pi)$ , where Q is a group and  $\pi: G \to Q$  is an epimorphism (i.e., surjective homomorphism) of groups such that

- (i)  $\pi(h) = e_Q$ , the neutral element of Q, for all  $h \in H$ , and
- (ii) *Universal property of quotient*: given a group T and a group homomorphism  $t:G\to T$  satisfying  $H\subseteq \mathrm{Ker}(t)$ , there exists a **unique** group homomorphism  $\widetilde{t}:Q\to T$  such that  $\widetilde{t}\circ\pi=t$ ; i.e., the following diagram commutes.

$$(4.1.2) \qquad G \xrightarrow{t} T$$

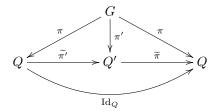
$$\pi \downarrow \qquad \qquad \exists \, ! \, \tilde{t}$$

Interesting point is that, without knowing existence of such a pair (Q, q), it follows immediately from the properties (i) and (ii) in Definition 4.1.1 that such a pair (Q, q), if it exists, must be unique up to a unique isomorphism of groups in the following sense.

**Proposition 4.1.3** (Uniqueness of Quotient). With the above notations, if  $(Q, \pi)$  and  $(Q', \pi')$  are two quotients of G by H, then there exists a unique group isomorphism  $\varphi : Q \to Q'$  such that  $\varphi \circ \pi = \pi'$ .

*Proof.* Taking  $(T,t)=(Q',\pi')$  by universal property of quotient  $(Q,\pi)$  we have a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{\pi'}:Q\to Q'$  such that  $\widetilde{\pi'}\circ\pi=\pi'$ . Similarly, taking  $(T,t)=(Q,\pi)$  by universal property of quotient  $(Q',\pi')$  we have a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{\pi}:Q'\to Q$  such that  $\widetilde{\pi}\circ\pi'=\pi$ . Since both  $\widetilde{\pi}\circ\widetilde{\pi'}$  and  $\mathrm{Id}_Q$  are group homomorphisms from Q into itself making the

following diagram commutative,



it follows that  $\widetilde{\pi} \circ \widetilde{\pi'} = \operatorname{Id}_Q$ . Similarly  $\widetilde{\pi'} \circ \widetilde{\pi} = \operatorname{Id}_{Q'}$ . Therefore,  $\widetilde{\pi'} : Q \to Q'$  is the unique group isomorphisms such that  $\widetilde{\pi'} \circ \pi = \pi'$ . This completes the proof.

### 4.2 Left and right cosets

Now question is about existence of quotient. We shall see shortly that we need to impose an additional hypothesis on H (namely H should be a "normal" subgroup of G) for existence of quotient. The condition (i) in Definition 4.1.1 says that  $\pi(H) = \{e_Q\}$ . Since  $\pi: G \to Q$  is a group homomorphism by assumption, given any two elements  $a,b \in G$  with  $a^{-1}b \in H$  we have  $\pi(a^{-1}b) = e_Q$ , and hence  $\pi(a) = \pi(b)$ . In other words, two elements  $a,b \in G$  are in the same fiber of the map  $\pi: G \to Q$  if  $a^{-1}b \in H$ . Since the set of all fibers of any set map  $f: G \to Q$  gives a partition of G, and hence an equivalence relation on G, the condition (i) suggests us to define a relation  $\rho_L$  on G by setting

$$(a,b) \in \rho_L$$
 if  $a^{-1}b \in H$ .

It is easy to check that  $\rho_L$  is an equivalence relation on G (verify!). The  $\rho_L$ -equivalence class of an element  $a \in G$  is the subset

$$[a]_{\rho_L} := \{b \in G : a^{-1}b \in H\} = \{ah : h \in H\},\$$

which we denote by aH; the subset aH is called the **left coset** of H in G represented by a. Note that (verify!), given  $a, b \in G$ ,

- (i) either  $aH \cap bH = \emptyset$  or aH = bH,
- (ii) aH = bH if and only if  $a^{-1}b \in H$ , and
- (iii)  $G = \bigcup_{a \in G} aH$ .

**Proposition 4.2.1.** For each  $a \in G$ , the map  $\varphi_a : H \to aH$  defined by  $\varphi_a(h) = ah$ , for all  $h \in H$ , is bijective. Consequently, |aH| = |bH|, for all  $a, b \in H$ .

*Proof.* Since every element of aH is of the form ah, for some  $h \in H$ , we see that  $\varphi_a(h) = ah$ , and hence  $\varphi_a$  is surjective. Since ah = ah' implies that  $h = (a^{-1}a)h = a^{-1}(ah) = a^{-1}(ah') = (a^{-1}a)h' = h'$ , we see that  $\varphi_a$  is injective. Therefore,  $\varphi_a$  is bijective. Thus, both H and aH have the same cardinality.

Let  $G/H = \{aH : a \in G\}$  be the set of all distinct left cosets of H in G.

**Theorem 4.2.2** (Lagrange's Theorem). Let G be a finite group, and H a subgroup of G. Then |H| divides |G|.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>The *fiber* of a map  $f: X \to Y$  over a point  $y \in Y$  is the subset  $f^{-1}(y) = \{x \in X : f(x) = y\} \subseteq X$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\rho_L$  is an equivalence relation on G, it follows from Proposition 1.1.31 that G is a disjoint union of distinct left cosets of H in G. Since G is finite, there can be at most finitely many distinct left cosets of H in G. Since |aH| = |bH|, for all  $a, b \in G$  (see Proposition 4.2.1), it follows that

$$|G| = |G/H| \cdot |H|,$$

where |G/H| is the cardinality of the set G/H, i.e., the number of distinct left cosets of H in G. This completes the proof.

**Exercise 4.2.3.** Let G be a finite group of order mn having subgroups H and K of orders m and n, respectively. If gcd(m, n) = 1 show that  $HK := \{hk \in G : h \in H, k \in K\}$  is a group.

**Corollary 4.2.4.** *Let* G *be a finite group of order* n. *Then for any*  $a \in G$ , ord(a) *divides* n. *In particular,*  $a^n = e, \ \forall \ a \in G$ .

*Proof.* Let H be the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a. Since G is a finite group, so is H. Then by Lagrange's theorem 4.2.2, |H| divides |G|=n. Since  $|H|=\operatorname{ord}(a)$ , the result follows. To see the second part, note that if  $\operatorname{ord}(a)=k$ , then n=km, for some  $m\in\mathbb{N}$ , and so  $a^n=(a^k)^m=e^m=e$ .

**Exercise 4.2.5.** Let G be a finite group of order n. Let  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  be such that gcd(n, k) = 1. Show that the map  $f: G \to G$  defined by  $f(a) = a^k$ ,  $\forall a \in G$ , is injective, and hence is bijective.

**Corollary 4.2.6.** Any group of prime order is cyclic.

*Proof.* Let G be a finite group of order p, where p is a prime number. If p=2, then clearly G is cyclic. Suppose that p>2. Then there is an element  $a\in G$  such that  $a\neq e$ . Since the cyclic subgroup  $\in H_a:=\langle a\rangle=\{a^n:n\in\mathbb{Z}\}$  contains both a and e, we have  $|H_a|\geq 2$ . Since  $|H_a|$  divides |G|=p by Lagrange's theorem, we must have  $|H_a|=p$ , because p is prime. Then we must have  $G=H_a$ , and hence G is cyclic.

**Corollary 4.2.7** (Euler's Theorem). Let  $n \geq 2$  be an integer. Then for any positive integer a with  $\gcd(a,n)=1$ , we have  $a^{\phi(n)}\equiv 1 \pmod n$ , where  $\phi(n)$  is the number of elements in the set  $\{k\in\mathbb{N}:1\leq k< n \text{ and }\gcd(k,n)=1\}$ .

*Proof.* Note that,  $U_n := \{[a] \in \mathbb{Z}_n : \gcd(a,n) = 1\}$  is a finite subset of  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  containing  $\phi(n)$  elements. Since  $U_n$  is a group with respect to the multiplication operation modulo n, for any  $[a] \in U_n$  we have  $[a]^{\phi(n)} = [1]$ . In other words,  $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ .

**Corollary 4.2.8** (Fermat's little theorem). If p > 0 is a prime number, then for any positive integer a with gcd(a, p) = 1, we have  $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\phi(p) = |U_p| = p - 1$ , the result follows from the Corollary 4.2.7.

**Exercise 4.2.9.** Show that  $2^{6000} - 1$  is divisible by 7.

*Solution.* Since  $\gcd(2,7)=1$ , by Fermat's little theorem we have  $2^{7-1}\equiv 1 \pmod{7}$ . So  $[2^6]=[1]$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_7$ . Then  $[2^6]^{1000}=[1]^{1000}=[1^{1000}]=[1]$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_7$ . Therefore,  $2^{6000}\equiv 1 \pmod{7}$ , and hence  $2^{6000}-1$  is divisible by 7.

**Exercise 4.2.10.** Show that  $15^{1000} - 1$  and  $105^{1200} - 1$  are divisible by 8.

**Exercise 4.2.11.** Define a relation  $\rho_R$  on G by setting

$$(a,b) \in \rho_R \text{ if } ab^{-1} \in H.$$

(i) Show that  $\rho_R$  is an equivalence relation on G.

(ii) Show that the  $\rho_R$ -equivalence class of  $a \in G$  in G is the subset of G defined by

$$[a]_{\rho_R} := \{b \in G : a^{-1}b \in H\} = \{ha : h \in H\} =: Ha.$$

The subset  $Ha \subseteq G$  is called the *right coset* of H in G represented by a.

- (iii) Show that if G is abelian then aH = Ha, for all  $a \in G$ .
- (iv) Give an example of a group G, two subgroups H and K of G, and an element  $b \in G$  such that that  $bK \neq Kb$ , while aH = Ha holds, for all  $a \in G$ . (*Hint*: Take  $G = S_3$ , and

$$H := \{e, (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\} \subset S_3$$
 and  $K := \{e, (2\ 3)\} \subset S_3$ .

Note that both H and K are subgroups of  $S_3$ . Verify that  $aH=Ha, \ \forall \ a\in S_3$ , while for  $b=(1\ 3\ 2)\in S_3$  we have  $bK\neq Kb$ .)

(v) Show that H and Ha have the same cardinality, for all  $a \in G$ .

The set of all distinct right cosets of *H* in *G* is denoted by

$$H \setminus G = \{ Ha : a \in G \}.$$

**Lemma 4.2.12.** Let H be a subgroup of a group G. Then there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of all left cosets of H in G and the set of all right cosets of H in G. In other words, there is a bijective map  $\varphi: G/H \longrightarrow H\backslash G$ . Therefore, both the sets G/H and  $H\backslash G$  have the same cardinality.

*Proof.* Define a map  $\varphi: \{aH: a \in G\} \longrightarrow \{Hb: b \in G\}$  by sending  $\varphi(aH) = Ha^{-1}$ , for all  $a \in G$ . Note that, aH = bH if and only if  $a^{-1}b \in H$  if and only if  $a^{-1}(b^{-1})^{-1} \in H$  if and only if  $Ha^{-1} = Hb^{-1}$ . Therefore,  $\varphi$  is well-defined and injective. To show  $\varphi$  bijective, note that given any  $Hb \in \{Hb: b \in G\}$  we have  $\varphi(b^{-1}H) = Hb$ . Thus,  $\varphi$  is surjective, and hence is a bijective map.

**Definition 4.2.13.** Let H be a subgroup of a group G. We define the *index of* H *in* G, denoted as [G:H], to be the cardinality  $|G/H| = |H\backslash G|$ . In case, this is a finite number, the index [G:H] is the number of distinct left (and right) cosets of H in G.

**Exercise 4.2.14.** Let H and K be two subgroups of G of finite indices. Show that  $H \cap K$  is a subgroup of G of finite index.

**Example 4.2.15.** The index of  $n\mathbb{Z}$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$  is n. Indeed, given any two elements  $a,b\in\mathbb{Z}$ , we have  $a-b\in n\mathbb{Z}$  if and only if  $a\equiv b\pmod{n}$ . Therefore, the left coset of  $n\mathbb{Z}$  represented by  $a\in\mathbb{Z}$  is precisely the equivalence class

$$[a] := \{ b \in \mathbb{Z} : a \equiv b \pmod{n} \} = a + n\mathbb{Z}.$$

Since there are exactly n such distinct equivalence classes by division algorithm, namely

$$a + n\mathbb{Z}$$
, where  $0 \le a \le n - 1$ ;

(c.f. Example 1.1.32), we conclude that the index of  $n\mathbb{Z}$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$  is  $[\mathbb{Z} : n\mathbb{Z}] = n$ . We shall explain it later using group homomorphism and quotient group.

**Exercise 4.2.16.** (i) Does there exists a group isomorphism from  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  onto  $(\mathbb{Q}^*, \cdot)$ ?

- (ii) Does there exists a surjective group homomorphism from  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  onto  $(\mathbb{Q}^+, \cdot)$ ?
- (iii) Does there exists a non-trivial group homomorphism from  $\mathbb{Q}$  into  $\mathbb{Z}$ ?

### 4.3 Normal Subgroups

In this section we introduce the notion of normal subgroup and give a construction of quotient of a group by its normal subgroup. Recall that the condition (i) in Definition 4.1.1 of quotient group suggests us to consider the set

$$G/H := \{gH : g \in G\}$$

consisting of all left cosets of H in G as a possible candidate for the set Q. Now question is what should be the appropriate group structure on it? Take any group homomorphism  $f:G\to T$  such that  $H\subseteq \mathrm{Ker}(f)$ . Then we have f(a)=f(b) if  $a^{-1}b\in H$ . The commutativity of the diagram (4.1.2) tells us to send  $aH\in Q$  to  $f(a)\in T$  to define the map  $\widetilde{f}:Q\to T$  which needs to be a group homomorphism. Then we should have

$$\widetilde{f}((aH)(bH)) = f(ab) = \widetilde{f}((ab)H), \ \forall \ a, b \in G.$$

This suggests us to define a binary operation on the set  $G/H = \{gH : g \in G\}$  by

$$(4.3.2) (aH)(bH) := (ab)H, \ \forall \ a, b \in G.$$

**Proposition 4.3.3.** The map  $G/H \times G/H \to G/H$  defined by sending (aH, bH) to (ab)H is well-defined if and only if

$$(4.3.4) g^{-1}hg \in H, \ \forall g \in G \ and \ h \in H.$$

*Proof.* Suppose the the above map is well-defined. Let  $h \in H$  and  $g \in G$  be arbitrary. Then hH = H, and hence  $(hH) \cdot (gH) = H \cdot (gH)$ . Since the above defined binary operation on G/H is well-defined, we have (hg)H = gH and hence  $g^{-1}hg \in H$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $g^{-1}hg \in H$ , for all  $g \in G$  and  $h \in H$ . Let  $a_1H = a_2H$  and  $b_1H = b_2H$ , for some  $a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2 \in G$ . Then  $h := a_1^{-1}a_2 \in H$  and  $b_1^{-1}b_2 \in H$ . Then

$$(a_1b_1)^{-1}(a_2b_2) = b_1^{-1}a_1^{-1}a_2b_2$$
  
=  $b_1^{-1}hb_2$ , since  $h := a_1^{-1}a_2$ .  
=  $(b_1^{-1}hb_1)(b_1^{-1}b_2) \in H$ ,

since H is a group and both  $b_1^{-1}hb_1$  and  $b_1^{-1}b_2$  are in H. Therefore,  $(a_1b_1)H=(a_2b_2)H$ , as required.

Proposition 4.3.3 suggests us to reserve a terminology for those subgroups H of G that satisfies the property (4.3.4).

**Definition 4.3.5** (Normal Subgroup). A subgroup H of a group G is said to be *normal* in G if  $g^{-1}hg \in H$ ,  $\forall g \in G$ ,  $h \in H$ . In this case we express it symbolically by  $H \subseteq G$ .

**Exercise 4.3.6.** Let G be a group and H a subgroup of G. Given  $a \in G$ , let

$$Ha := \{ha : h \in H\} \subseteq G.$$

Show that the following are equivalent.

- (i) aH = Ha, for all  $a \in G$ .
- (ii)  $a^{-1}Ha = H$ , for all  $a \in G$ .
- (iii)  $a^{-1}Ha \subseteq H$ , for all  $a \in G$ .
- (iv)  $a^{-1}ha \in H$ , for all  $a \in G$  and  $h \in H$ .

**Proposition 4.3.7.** Any subgroup of index 2 is normal.

*Proof.* Let H be a subgroup of G such that [G:H]=2. Then H has only two left (resp., right) cosets, namely H and aH (resp., H and Ha), where  $a \in G \setminus H$ . Since  $G = H \sqcup aH = H \sqcup Ha$ , for any  $a \in G \setminus H$ , we see that aH = Ha, for all  $a \in G$ , and hence  $aHa^{-1} = H$ , for all  $a \in G$ . This completes the proof.

**Corollary 4.3.8.** For all  $n \geq 3$ ,  $A_n$  is a normal subgroup of  $S_n$ .

**Exercise 4.3.9.** (i) Show that any subgroups of an abelian group G is normal in G.

- (ii) Let  $H = \langle (1 \ 2 \ 3) \rangle$  be the cyclic subgroup of  $S_3$  generated by the 3-cycle  $(1 \ 2 \ 3) \in S_3$ . Show that H is a normal subgroup of  $S_3$ .
- (iii) Verify if the subgroup  $K := \langle (1 \ 2) \rangle$  of  $S_3$  is normal or not.
- (iv) Determine all normal subgroups of  $S_3$ .
- (v) Show that  $\mathrm{SL}_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a normal subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Exercise 4.3.10.** Show that  $S_4$  has no normal subgroup of order 3. (*Hint*: If  $\sigma \in S_4$  has order 3, then  $\sigma$  is a 3-cycle in  $S_4$ . Since there are  $\frac{4!}{3} = 8$  distinct 3-cycles in  $S_4$  (see Exercise 2.2.11), and all of them are conjugates (see Proposition 2.2.8), a normal subgroup H of  $S_4$  containing a 3-cycle contains at least 8 elements.)

**Exercise 4.3.11.** Let H be a subgroup of G. Let  $\rho = \{(a,b) \in G \times G : a^{-1}b \in H\} \subseteq G \times G$ . Note that  $\rho$  is an equivalence relation on G. Show that H is a normal subgroup of G if and only if  $\rho$  is a subgroup of the direct product group  $G \times G$  (see Exercise 1.1.34).

**Lemma 4.3.12.** The kernel of a group homomorphism  $f: G \to H$  is a normal subgroup of G.

*Proof.* For any  $a \in G$  and  $b \in \text{Ker}(f)$ , we have  $f(aba^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)f(a^{-1}) = f(a)e_Hf(a)^{-1} = e_H$ , and hence  $aba^{-1} \in \text{Ker}(f)$ . Therefore, Ker(f) is a normal subgroup of G.

**Exercise 4.3.13.** For  $n \ge 2$ , show that  $A_n$  is a normal subgroup of  $S_n$  by constructing a group homomorphism  $\varphi: S_n \to \mu_2 = \{1, -1\}$  such that  $\operatorname{Ker}(\varphi) = A_n$ .

**Exercise 4.3.14.** For  $n \geq 1$ , show that  $\mathrm{SL}_n(\mathbb{R})$  is a normal subgroup of  $\mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$  by constructing a group homomorphism  $\varphi : \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}^*$  such that  $\mathrm{Ker}(\varphi) = \mathrm{SL}_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

**Lemma 4.3.15.** Let  $f: G \to H$  be a group homomorphism. If K is a normal subgroup of H, then  $f^{-1}(K)$  is a normal subgroup of G.

*Proof.* Suppose that K is a normal subgroup of H. Then for any  $a \in G$  and  $b \in f^{-1}(K)$ , we have  $f(aba^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)f(a)^{-1} \in K$ , and hence  $aba^{-1} \in f^{-1}(K)$ .

**Exercise 4.3.16.** Show that  $N := \{A \in GL_n(\mathbb{C}) : |\det(A)| = 1\}$  is a normal subgroup of  $GL_n(\mathbb{C})$ .

**Remark 4.3.17.** Normal subgroup of a normal subgroup need not be normal. To elaborate it, there exists a group G together with a normal subgroup H of G such that H has a normal subgroup G which is not a normal subgroup of G. Can you give such an example?

# 4.4 Construction of quotient groups

**Theorem 4.4.1** (Existence of Quotient Group). Let H be a normal subgroup of a group G. Then the quotient group  $(Q,\pi)$  of G by H exists and is unique in the sense that if  $(Q,\pi)$  and  $(Q',\pi')$  are two quotients of G by H, then there exists a unique isomorphism of groups  $\varphi:Q\to Q'$  such that  $\varphi\circ\pi'=\pi$ . We denote Q by G/H.

*Proof.* Since H is a normal subgroup of G,

$$(aH)(bH) := (ab)H, \ \forall \ a, b \in G,$$

is a well-defined binary operation on the set  $G/H := \{aH : a \in G\}$ ; see Proposition 4.3.3. Given any  $a, b, c \in G$ , we have

$$(aH \cdot bH) \cdot cH = (ab)H \cdot cH = ((ab)c)H = (a(bc))H = aH \cdot (bC)H = aH \cdot (bH \cdot cH).$$

Therefore, the binary operation on G/H is associative. Given any  $aH \in G/H$ , we have

$$aH \cdot eH = (ae)H = aH$$
 and  $eH \cdot aH = (ea)H = aH$ .

Therefore,  $eH = H \in G/H$  is neutral element for the binary operation on G/H. Given any  $aH \in G/H$ , note that

$$aH\cdot a^{-1}H=(aa^{-1})H=eH$$
 and 
$$a^{-1}H\cdot aH=(a^{-1}a)H=eH.$$

Therefore, G/H is a group. Set Q := G/H and consider the map

$$(4.4.2) \pi: G \longrightarrow Q defined by \pi(a) = aH, \forall a \in G.$$

Clearly  $\pi$  is surjective and given  $a,b \in G$  we have  $\pi(ab) = (ab)H = (aH)(bH) = \pi(a)\pi(b)$ . Therefore,  $\pi$  is a group homomorphism. Since for any  $h \in H$ , we have  $\pi(h) = hH = eH = H$ , the neutral element of the group G/H, we see that  $H \subseteq \operatorname{Ker}(\pi)$ . Let T be any group and  $t:G \to T$  be a group homomorphism satisfying  $t(h) = e_T$ , the neutral element of T, for all  $t \in T$ . Since aH = bH if and only if  $a^{-1}b \in H$ , applying  $\pi$  on  $a^{-1}b$  we see that  $\pi(a) = \pi(b)$ . Therefore, the map

$$(4.4.3) \widetilde{t}: G/H \to T, \ aH \longmapsto t(a),$$

is well-defined. Since

$$\widetilde{t}((aH)(bH)) = \widetilde{t}((ab)H) = f(ab) = f(a)f(b) = \widetilde{t}(aH)\widetilde{t}(bH),$$

we conclude that  $\widetilde{t}$  is a group homomorphism. Since  $(\widetilde{t} \circ \pi)(a) = \widetilde{t}(aH) = f(a), \ \forall \ a \in G$ , we have  $\widetilde{t} \circ \pi = f$ . If  $\xi : G/H \to T$  is any group homomorphism satisfying  $\xi \circ \pi = t$ , then for any  $a \in G$  we have  $\widetilde{t}(aH) = (\widetilde{t} \circ \pi)(a) = t(a) = (\xi \circ \pi)(a) = \xi(aH)$ , and hence  $\widetilde{t} = \xi$ . Therefore, the pair  $(G/H, \pi)$  satisfy the properties (i) and (ii), and hence is a quotient of G by H. Uniqueness is already shown in Proposition 4.1.3.

**Corollary 4.4.4.** *Let* H *be a normal subgroup of a group* G*, and let*  $(G/H, \pi)$  *be the associated quotient of* G *by* H. Then  $Ker(\pi) = H$ .

*Proof.* Since the group operation on the quotient group  $G/H := \{aH : a \in G\}$  is given by  $(aH)(bH) := (ab)H, \ \forall \ aH, bH \in G/H$ , we have

$$\operatorname{Ker}(\pi) = \{ a \in G : \pi(a) = H \}$$
  
=  $\{ a \in G : aH = H \}$   
=  $\{ a \in G : a \in H \} = H.$ 

This completes the proof.

**Exercise 4.4.5.** Let G be a group such that G/Z(G) is cyclic. Show that G is abelian.

Solution: Let Z:=Z(G). Suppose that G/Z is cyclic. Then  $G/Z=\langle aZ\rangle$ , for some  $a\in G$ . Let  $x\in G$  be arbitrary. Then  $xZ=(aZ)^n=a^nZ$ , for some  $n\in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $a^{-n}x=(a^n)^{-1}x\in Z$ . Therefore,  $a^{-n}x=z$ , for some  $z\in Z$ , and so  $x=a^nz$ , for some  $z\in Z=Z(G)$ . Let  $y\in G$  be given. Then as before,  $y=a^mw$ , for some  $m\in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $w\in Z(G)$ . Since  $z,w\in Z(G)$ , we have  $xy=a^nza^mw=a^mwa^nz=yx$ , as required.

**Corollary 4.4.6.** There is no group G such that |G/Z(G)| is a prime number.

# Chapter 5

# **Isomorphism Theorems**

## 5.1 First isomorphism theorem

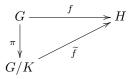
Let G be a group. Given a normal subgroup K of G, let  $(G/K, \pi)$  be the associated quotient group of G by K, where

$$\pi:G\to G/K=\{aK:a\in G\}$$

is the natural quotient homomorphism given by

$$\pi(a) = aK, \ \forall \ a \in G.$$

**Theorem 5.1.1.** Let  $f: G \to H$  be a group homomorphism. Let K be a normal subgroup of G such that  $K \subseteq \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ . Then there is a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{f}: G/K \longrightarrow H$  such that  $\widetilde{f} \circ \pi = f$ , where  $\pi: G \to G/K$  is the quotient homomorphism.



Furthermore,  $\tilde{f}$  is injective if and only if K = Ker(f).

*Proof.* Since K is a normal subgroup of G, the quotient group G/K exists with the natural surjective group homomorphism  $\pi:G\to G/K$  defined by  $\pi(a)=aK, \ \forall \ a\in G$ . Since  $K\subseteq \mathrm{Ker}(f)$ , by universal property of quotient (see Definition 4.1.1) we have a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{f}:G/K\to H$  such that  $\widetilde{f}\circ\pi=f$ . The fact that  $\widetilde{f}$  is a well-defined group homomorphism can also be directly checked by observing that

$$\widetilde{f}(aK) = (\widetilde{f} \circ \pi)(a) = f(a), \ \forall \ a \in G.$$

Since  $\operatorname{Ker}(\widetilde{f}) = \{gK : f(g) = e_H\} = \{gK : g \in \operatorname{Ker}(f)\}$ , we see that  $\operatorname{Ker}(\widetilde{f})$  is trivial (meaning that, it is a trivial subgroup) if and only if gK = K,  $\forall g \in \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ . This is equivalent to say that,  $g \in K$ ,  $\forall g \in \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ , i.e.,  $\operatorname{Ker}(f) \subseteq K$ . Since  $K \subseteq \operatorname{Ker}(f)$  by assumption, it follows from Proposition 3.3.3 that  $\widetilde{f}$  is injective if and only if  $K = \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ .

**Slogan:** To get a group homomorphism from a quotient group G/H to a group G', thanks to Theorem 5.1.1 we just need to define a group homomorphism  $f: G \to G'$  such that  $H \subseteq \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ .

**Example 5.1.2.** Let  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  be a normal subgroups of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$ , respectively. Note that  $H_1 \times H_2$  is a normal subgroup of  $G_1 \times G_2$  (verify!). Let  $\pi_1 : G_1 \to G_1/H_1$  and  $\pi_2 : G_2 \to G_2/H_2$ 

be the natural quotient group homomorphisms. These give rise to a group homomorphism  $\phi: G_1 \times G_2 \to (G_1/H_1) \times (G_2/H_2)$  given by

$$\phi(a_1, a_2) = (\pi_1(a_1), \pi_2(a_2)) = (a_1H_1, a_2H_2), \ \forall (a_1, a_2) \in G_1 \times G_2.$$

Note that  $\phi$  is surjective because both  $\pi_1$  and  $\pi_2$  are so. Moreover,  $\operatorname{Ker}(\phi) = H_1 \times H_2$  (verify!). Then by Theorem 5.1.1, given any normal subgroup K of  $G_1 \times G_2$  with  $K \leq H_1 \times H_2$ , there is a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{\phi}: (G_1 \times G_2)/K \longrightarrow (G_1/H_1) \times (G_2/H_2)$  such that  $\widetilde{\phi} \circ \pi_K = \phi$ , where  $\pi_K: G_1 \times G_2 \to (G_1 \times G_2)/K$  is the natural quotient group homomorphism.

As an immediate corollary, we have the following.

**Corollary 5.1.3** (First Isomorphism Theorem). *Let*  $f: G \to H$  *be a surjective homomorphism of groups. Then* f *induces a natural isomorphism of groups*  $\widetilde{f}: G/\mathrm{Ker}(f) \to H$ .

*Proof.* Note that  $\mathrm{Ker}(f)$  is a normal subgroup of G. It follows from Theorem 5.1.1 that the group homomorphism  $\widetilde{f}: G/\mathrm{Ker}(f) \to H$  induced by f is injective. Since f is surjective and  $\widetilde{f} \circ \pi = f$ , where  $\pi: G \to G/\mathrm{Ker}(f)$  is the natural surjective homomorphism, it follows that  $\widetilde{f}$  is surjective. Therefore,  $\widetilde{f}$  is a bijective group homomorphism, and hence is an isomorphism of groups.

Let G be a group. Note that given a normal subgroup N of G, the quotient group G/N of G by N comes with a natural surjective group homomorphism  $\pi_N:G\to G/N$  such that  $\mathrm{Ker}(\pi_N)=N$  (see Definition 4.1.1 and Corollary 4.4.4). On the other hand, given a group Q and a surjective group homomorphism  $\pi:G\to Q$ , its kernel  $\mathrm{Ker}(\pi)$  is a normal subgroup of G such that  $G/\mathrm{Ker}(\pi)\cong Q$  by the First isomorphism theorem (Corollary 5.1.3) for groups. This motivates us to define the following (c.f. Definition 4.1.1).

**Definition 5.1.4.** A *quotient group* of G is a pair  $(Q, \pi)$ , where Q is a group and  $\pi : G \to Q$  is a surjective group homomorphism.

As an immediate consequence, we have the following.

**Corollary 5.1.5.** *Given a group G, there is a one-to-one correspondence between the following two sets:* 

- (i)  $\mathcal{N}_G := \text{the set of all normal subgroups of } G$ , and
- (ii)  $Q_G :=$ the set of all quotient groups of G.

*Proof.* Define a map  $\Phi: \mathcal{N}_G \to \mathcal{Q}_G$  by sending a normal subgroup N of G to the associated quotient group  $(G/N,\pi_N)\in \mathcal{Q}_G$ . Since  $\pi_N$  is a surjective group homomorphism with  $\operatorname{Ker}(\pi_N)=N$ , the map  $\Phi$  admits an inverse, namely  $\Psi:\mathcal{Q}_G\to\mathcal{N}_G$  given by sending a quotient group  $(Q,\pi)$  of G to the kernel  $N:=\operatorname{Ker}(\pi)\in\mathcal{N}_G$ . Since the pairs  $(G/N,\pi_N)$  and  $(Q,\pi)$  are uniquely isomorphic, we conclude that  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are inverse to each other. This completes the proof.

**Proposition 5.1.6.** *The group*  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  *is isomorphic to*  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f: \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}_n$  be the map defined by

$$f(k) = [k], \ \forall \ k \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Since

$$f(k_1 + k_2) = [k_1 + k_2] = [k_1] + [k_2] = f(k_1) + f(k_2), \ \forall \ k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z},$$

we see that f is a group homomorphism. Clearly f is surjective (verify!). Note that  $\text{Ker}(f) = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : [k] = [0]\} = n\mathbb{Z}$ . Then by first isomorphism theorem we have  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{Z}_n$ .

5.2. Abelianization 47

**Proposition 5.1.7.** Any finite cyclic group of order n is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}_n$ .

*Proof.* Let G be a finite cyclic group of order n. Then there exists  $a \in G$  such that  $\langle a \rangle = \{a^k : k \in \mathbb{Z}\} = G$ . Define a map  $f : \mathbb{Z} \to G$  by

$$f(k) = a^k, \ \forall \ k \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Since

$$f(k_1 + k_2) = a^{k_1 + k_2} = a^{k_1} a^{k_2} = f(k_1) f(k_2), \ \forall k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z},$$

f is a group homomorphism. Clearly f is surjective because every element of G is of the form  $a^k$ , for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then by first isomorphism theorem G is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}/\mathrm{Ker}(f)$ . Note that,  $\mathrm{Ker}(f) = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : a^k = e\}$ . Since G is a cyclic group of order n generated by a, we have  $\mathrm{ord}(a) = n$  (see Corollary 1.3.11). Then we have  $\mathrm{Ker}(f) = \{k \in \mathbb{Z} : a^k = e\} = n\mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore,  $G \cong \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Since  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{Z}_n$  by Theorem 5.1.6, we have  $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_n$ .

**Exercise 5.1.8.** Show that any group of order 4 is isomorphic to either  $\mathbb{Z}_4$  or  $K_4$ .

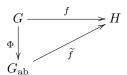
**Exercise 5.1.9.** Show that any group of order 6 is isomorphic to either  $\mathbb{Z}_6$  or  $S_3$ .

**Exercise 5.1.10.** Use the signature homomorphism  $S_n \to \mu_2 = \{1, -1\}$  to show that  $A_n$  is the only index 2 subgroup of  $S_n$ .

**Exercise 5.1.11.** Show that  $SL_2(\mathbb{Z}_3)$  and  $S_4$  are two non-isomorphic non-commutative groups of order 24.

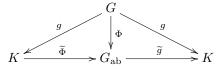
#### 5.2 Abelianization

**Theorem 5.2.1** (Abelianization). Let G be a group. Then upto isomorphism there exists a unique pair  $(G_{ab}, \Phi)$  consisting of an abelian group  $G_{ab}$  and a surjective group homomorphism  $\Phi: G \to G_{ab}$  satisfying the following universal property: given any abelian group H and a group homomorphism  $f: G \to H$ , there exists a unique group homomorphism  $f: G_{ab} \to H$  such that  $f \circ \Phi = f$ .



The group  $G_{ab}$  is known as the maximal abelian quotient or the abelianization of G.

*Proof. Uniqueness:* First we prove uniqueness of the pair  $(G_{\mathrm{ab}},\Phi)$  upto unique isomorphism of groups. Suppose that (K,g) be another such pair consisting of an abelian group K and a surjective group homomorphism  $g:G\to K$  such that the pair (K,g) satisfies the above universal property. Taking  $(H,f)=(G_{\mathrm{ab}},\Phi)$  we find a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{\Phi}:K\to G_{\mathrm{ab}}$  such that  $\widetilde{\Phi}\circ g=\Phi$ .



Applying universal property of  $(G_{ab}, \Phi)$  with (H, f) = (K, g), we have a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{g}: G_{ab} \to K$  such that  $\widetilde{g} \circ \Phi = g$ . Since the composite map  $\widetilde{g} \circ \widetilde{\Phi}: K \to K$  is a group homomorphism, by the universal property of the pair (K, g) we have  $\widetilde{g} \circ \widetilde{\Phi} = \mathrm{Id}_{K}$ , where  $\mathrm{Id}_{K}: K \to K$  is the identity map of K. Similarly, we have  $\widetilde{\Phi} \circ \widetilde{g} = \mathrm{Id}_{G_{ab}}$ . Therefore, both

 $\widetilde{g}: K \to G_{\mathrm{ab}}$  and  $\widetilde{\Phi}: G_{\mathrm{ab}} \to K$  are isomorphism of groups. Since both  $\widetilde{\Phi}$  and  $\widetilde{g}$  are unique and  $\widetilde{\Phi} \circ g = \Phi$  and  $\widetilde{g} \circ \Phi = g$ , we conclude that the pair (K, g) is uniquely isomorphic to  $(G_{\mathrm{ab}}, \Phi)$ .

*Existence*: To prove existence of the pair  $(G_{ab}, \Phi)$ , consider the elements of G of the form

$$[a,b] := aba^{-1}b^{-1},$$

where  $a, b \in G$ , called *commutators* in G. Clearly [a, b] = e if G is abelian. Let

$$[G,G] := \langle aba^{-1}b^{-1} : a,b \in G \rangle$$

be the subgroup of G generated by all commutators of elements of G. The subgroup [G,G] is known as the *commutator subgroup* or the *derived subgroup* of G. Since

$$ghg^{-1} = ghg^{-1}h^{-1}h = [g, h]h, \ \forall g, h \in G,$$

taking  $h \in [G,G]$  we see that [G,G] is a normal subgroup of G. Let  $G_{\mathrm{ab}} := G/[G,G]$  be the associated quotient group, and let  $\Phi: G \to G_{\mathrm{ab}}$  be the natural quotient map which sends  $a \in G$  to the coset  $a[G,G] \in G/[G,G] = G_{\mathrm{ab}}$ . Let us denote by  $\overline{a}$  the image of  $a \in G$  in G/[G,G] under the quotient map  $\Phi: G \to G/[G,G]$ . Since

$$(ab)(ba)^{-1} = aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in [G,G], \ \forall \ a,b \in G,$$

we have  $\overline{a}\overline{b}=\overline{b}\overline{a}$  in G/[G,G]. Therefore, G/[G,G] is commutative. If  $f:G\to H$  is a group homomorphism, then

$$f([a,b]) = f(aba^{-1}b^{-1}) = [f(a), f(b)], \forall a, b \in G.$$

Now suppose that H is abelian. Then for any  $a,b \in G$ , we have [f(a),f(b)]=e, and so  $[a,b] \in \mathrm{Ker}(f)$ . Therefore,  $[G,G] \subseteq \mathrm{Ker}(f)$ . Consequently, by universal property of quotient (see Definition 4.1.1) there is a unique homomorphism  $\widetilde{f}:G/[G,G] \to H$  such that  $\widetilde{f} \circ \Phi = f$ . This completes the proof of existence part.  $\square$ 

**Proposition 5.2.2.** The commutator subgroup of  $S_n$  is  $A_n$ , for all  $n \geq 3$ .

*Proof.* Since the signature map  $sgn : S_n \to \mu_2 = \{1, -1\}$  defined by

$$\mathrm{sgn}(\sigma) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is even,} \\ -1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is odd,} \end{array} \right.$$

is a group homomorphism (see Lemma 3.1.4), we have  $sgn(\sigma)^{-1} = sgn(\sigma)$ , for all  $\sigma \in S_n$ . Therefore, given  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$  we have

$$\operatorname{sgn}([\sigma,\tau]) = \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma \circ \tau \circ \sigma^{-1}\tau^{-1}) = \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma)\operatorname{sgn}(\tau)\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma)^{-1}\operatorname{sgn}(\tau)^{-1} = 1.$$

Therefore,  $[\sigma, \tau] \in A_n$ , for all  $\sigma, \tau \in S_n$ , and hence  $[S_n, S_n] \subseteq A_n$ . To show the reverse inclusion, note that  $A_n$  is generated by 3-cycles, for all  $n \ge 3$  (see Exercise 2.4.3), and any 3-cycle  $(i \ j \ k)$  in  $S_n$  can be written as

$$(i \ j \ k) = (i \ j) \circ (i \ k) \circ (i \ j)^{-1} \circ (i \ k)^{-1},$$

which is an element of  $[S_n, S_n]$ . Thus  $A_n \subseteq [S_n, S_n]$ . This completes the proof.

**Exercise 5.2.3.** Show that the abelianization of  $S_n$  is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ , for all  $n \geq 3$ .

**Exercise 5.2.4.** Given any two groups H and K, let Hom(H, K) be the set of all group homomorphisms from H into K. Fix an integer  $n \ge 3$ .

- (i) Given an abelian group G, show that there is a natural bijective map  $\operatorname{Hom}(S_n,G) \longrightarrow \operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}_2,G)$ .
- (ii) Find the number of elements in  $\text{Hom}(S_n, \mathbb{Z}_4 \times \mathbb{Z}_6)$ .

**Exercise 5.2.5.** Show that  $S_4$  has no normal subgroup of order 8. (*Hint*: If H is a normal subgroup of  $S_4$  of order 8, the quotient group  $S_4/H$  is abelian, and hence  $A_4 = [S_4, S_4] \subseteq H$ , a contradiction.)

## 5.3 Inner Automorphisms

Let *G* be a group. Given  $a \in G$ , the map  $\varphi_a : G \to G$  defined by

$$\varphi_a(b) = aba^{-1}, \ \forall \ b \in G,$$

is a group homomorphism. Indeed,

$$\varphi_a(bc) = a(bc)a^{-1} = (aba^{-1})(aca^{-1}) = \varphi_a(b)\varphi_a(c), \ \forall \ b, c \in G.$$

Since  $\operatorname{Ker}(\varphi_a) = \{b \in G : aba^{-1} = e\} = \{e\}$ ,  $\varphi_a$  is injective. Given  $c \in G$ , note that  $\varphi_a(a^{-1}ca) = a(a^{-1}ca)a^{-1} = c$ , and so  $\varphi_a$  is surjective. Therefore,  $\varphi_a$  is an isomorphism.

**Definition 5.3.1.** An automorphism  $\varphi \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$  is said to be an *inner automorphism of* G if there exists  $a \in G$  such that  $\varphi(b) = aba^{-1}$ , for all  $b \in G$ .

**Proposition 5.3.2.** Let G be a group. Let Inn(G) be the set of all inner autormorphisms of G. Then Inn(G) is a subgroup of Aut(G).

*Proof.* Note that the identity map  $\mathrm{Id}_G: G \to G$  is in  $\mathrm{Inn}(G)$ . Given  $f,g \in \mathrm{Inn}(G)$ , there exists  $a,b \in G$  such that f and  $g(x) = bxb^{-1}$ , for all  $x \in G$ . Then  $f^{-1} = \varphi_{a^{-1}}$ , and that  $(\varphi_a^{-1} \circ \varphi_b)(x) = a^{-1}bxb^{-1}a = (a^{-1}b)x(a^{-1}b)^{-1} = \varphi_{a^{-1}b}(x)$ , for all  $x \in G$ . Therefore,  $\mathrm{Inn}(G)$  is a subgroup of  $\mathrm{Aut}(G)$ .

**Proposition 5.3.3.** The map  $\varphi: G \to \text{Inn}(G)$  that sends  $a \in G$  to the map  $\varphi_a: G \to G$  defined by

$$\varphi(a)(b) = aba^{-1}, \ \forall \ b \in G,$$

is a surjective group homomorphism with kernel Z(G). Consequently,  $G/Z(G) \cong \operatorname{Inn}(G)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $a,b \in G$  be given. Then for any  $x \in G$  we have  $\varphi(ab)(x) = (ab)x(ab)^{-1} = a(bxb^{-1})a^{-1} = a(\varphi_b(x))a^{-1} = (\varphi_a \circ \varphi_b)(x)$ , and hence  $\varphi(ab) = \varphi(a) \circ \varphi(b)$ . Therefore,  $\varphi$  is a group homomorphism. Since every element of  $\mathrm{Inn}(G)$  is of the form  $\varphi_a$ , for some  $a \in G$ , the map  $\varphi$  is surjective. Since  $\mathrm{Ker}(\varphi) = \{a \in G : \varphi(a) = \mathrm{Id}_G\} = \{a \in G : aba^{-1} = b, \ \forall \ b \in G\} = Z(G)$ , by the first isomorphism theorem for groups we have  $G/Z(G) \cong \mathrm{Inn}(G)$ .

**Exercise 5.3.4.** Let G be a group such that G/Z(G) is cyclic. Show that Inn(G) is a trivial subgroup of Aut(G).

# 5.4 Second isomorphism theorem

**Theorem 5.4.1** (Second Isomorphism Theorem). Let G be a group. Let H and K be subgroups of G with K normal in G. Then

(i) HK is a subgroup of G,

- (ii) K is a normal subgroup of HK, and
- (iii)  $H/(H \cap K) \cong HK/K$ .
- *Proof.* (i) Let  $h \in H$  and  $k \in K$  be arbitrary. Since K is a normal subgroup of G, we have  $hk = (hkh^{-1})h \in KH$  and so  $HK \subseteq KH$ . Similarly,  $kh = h(h^{-1}kh) \in HK$  shows that  $KH \subseteq HK$ . Thus HK = KH and hence HK is a subgroup of G by Theorem 1.4.3.
- (ii) Clearly K is a subgroup of HK. Since K is normal in G, given any  $a \in HK \subseteq G$  and  $k \in K$  we have  $aka^{-1} \in K$ , and hence K is a normal subgroup of HK.
- (iii) Define a map  $\varphi: H \to HK/K$  by  $\varphi(a) = aK$ , for all  $a \in H$ . Since  $\varphi(ab) = (ab)K = (aK)(bK) = \varphi(a)\varphi(b)$ , for all  $a,b \in H$ ,  $\varphi$  is a group homomorphism. Since  $K \in HK/K$  is the neutral element, given any  $h \in H$  and  $k \in K$  we have  $(hk)K = (hK)(kK) = hK = \varphi(h)$ , and so  $\varphi$  is surjective. Since

$$Ker(\varphi) = \{ h \in H : hK = K \} = \{ h \in H : h \in K \} = H \cap K,$$

by first isomorphism theorem (see Corollary 5.1.3) we have  $H/(H \cap K) \cong HK/K$ .

**Example 5.4.2.** Let  $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $\gcd(m, n) = 1$ . Consider the subgroups  $H = m\mathbb{Z}$  and  $K = n\mathbb{Z}$  of  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$ . Since  $\mathbb{Z}$  is abelian, K is a normal subgroup of  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Since  $\gcd(m, n) = 1$ , there exists  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that am + bn = 1, and so  $1 \in H + K$ . Since  $\gcd(m, n) = 1$ , we have  $\operatorname{lcm}(m, n) = mn$ , and so  $H \cap K = mn\mathbb{Z}$ . Then by the second isomorphism theorem we have  $m\mathbb{Z}/mn\mathbb{Z} = H/(H \cap K) \cong (H + K)/K = \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ . Generalize this to the case when m and n are not necessarily coprime.

**Exercise 5.4.3.** Use the second isomorphism theorem for groups to prove the following.

- (i)  $3\mathbb{Z}/15\mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{Z}/5\mathbb{Z}$ , and
- (ii)  $6\mathbb{Z}/30\mathbb{Z} \cong 2\mathbb{Z}/10\mathbb{Z}$ . (Hint: Take  $H = 6\mathbb{Z}$  and  $K = 10\mathbb{Z}$ ).

## 5.5 Third isomorphism theorem

**Theorem 5.5.1** (Third Isomorphism Theorem). *Let* H *and* K *be normal subgroups of* G *with*  $K \subseteq H$ . *Then we have an isomorphism of groups*  $(G/K)/(H/K) \cong G/H$ .

*Proof.* Since H and K are normal subgroups of G and  $K \subseteq H$ , that K is a normal subgroup of H, and the associated quotient groups

- (i)  $\phi: G \to G/H$ ,
- (ii)  $\psi: G \to G/K$ , and
- (iii)  $\eta: H \to H/K$

exist. Let  $\iota_H: H \hookrightarrow G$  be the inclusion of H into G. Then the composite map

$$H \stackrel{\iota_H}{\hookrightarrow} G \stackrel{\psi}{\longrightarrow} G/K$$

is a group homomorphism with kernel K, and hence we get an injective group homomorphism

$$H/K \hookrightarrow G/K$$
.

Given  $h \in H$  and  $a \in G$ , we have  $aha^{-1} \in H$ , and so  $(aK)(hK)(aK)^{-1} = (ah)K \cdot a^{-1}K = (aha^{-1})K \in H/K$ . Therefore, H/K is a normal subgroup of G/K, and hence the associated quotient group  $\pi : G/K \to (G/K)/(H/K)$  exists. Consider the diagram

Note that  $H/K \in (G/K)/(H/K)$  is the neutral element of the group (G/K)/(H/K). Moreover, the composite map  $\pi \circ \psi$  is a surjective group homomorphism with kernel

$$\begin{split} \operatorname{Ker}(\pi \circ \psi) &= \{a \in G : \pi(\psi(a)) = e\} \\ &= \{a \in G : \pi(aK) = e\} \\ &= \{a \in G : aK(H/K) = H/K\} \\ &= \{a \in G : aK \in H/K\} \\ &= \{a \in G : a \in H\}, \text{ since the map } H/K \hookrightarrow G/K \text{ is injective.} \\ &= H \end{split}$$

Then by first isomorphism theorem (Corollary 5.1.3) applied to the group homomorphism  $\pi \circ \psi$  we have the required isomorphism  $G/H \cong (G/K)/(H/K)$  of groups.

**Corollary 5.5.2** (Correspondence Theorem). *Let*  $f: G \to H$  *be a surjective group homomorphism. Consider the following two sets:* 

- (i)  $A := the \ set \ of \ a \ subgroups \ of \ G \ containing \ Ker(f)$ , and
- (ii)  $\mathcal{B}$ := the set of all subgroups of H.

Then there is an inclusion preserving bijective map

$$\Phi:\mathcal{A} o\mathcal{B}$$

such that a subgroup  $N \in \mathcal{A}$  of G is normal in G if and only if  $\Phi(N)$  is normal in H.

*Proof.* Define a map  $\Phi: \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$  by sending a subgroup N of G containing  $\mathrm{Ker}(f)$  to its image f(N). Note that f(N) is a subgroup of H by Proposition 3.2.3 (i), and hence is an element of  $\mathcal{B}$ . Conversely, given a subgroup K of H, its preimage  $f^{-1}(K)$  is a subgroup of G by Proposition 3.2.3 (ii). Since  $e_H \in K$  we have  $\mathrm{Ker}(f) = f^{-1}(e) \subseteq f^{-1}(K)$ . Thus,  $f^{-1}(K) \in \mathcal{A}$ . This gives a map

$$\Psi: \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{A}, \ K \mapsto f^{-1}(K).$$

It remains to show that  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are inverse to each other. Given  $N \in \mathcal{A}$ , we have  $(\Psi \circ \Phi)(N) = f^{-1}(f(N)) \supseteq N$ . If  $a \in f^{-1}(f(N))$ , then f(a) = f(b), for some  $b \in N$ . Then  $f(ab^{-1}) = f(a)f(b)^{-1} = e_H$  implies  $ab^{-1} \in \operatorname{Ker}(f) \subseteq N$ , and so  $a = (ab^{-1})b \in N$ . Therefore,  $(\Psi \circ \Phi)(N) = f^{-1}(f(N)) = N$ , for all  $N \in \mathcal{A}$ , and hence  $\Psi \circ \Phi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathcal{A}}$ . Conversely, given  $K \in \mathcal{B}$ , we have  $(\Phi \circ \Psi)(K) = f(f^{-1}(K)) = K$ , since f is surjective. Thus  $\Phi \circ \Psi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathcal{B}}$ . This completes the proof.

**Exercise 5.5.3.** Let H be a normal subgroup of a group G. Show that every subgroup of G/H is of the form K/H, for some subgroup K of G containing H.

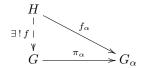
**Exercise 5.5.4.** Let  $\pi:G\to Q$  be a surjective group homomorphism. Let H be a normal subgroup of G and let  $\pi_H:H\to Q$  be the restriction of  $\pi$  on H. If  $K=H\cap \mathrm{Ker}(\pi)$ , show that the induced map  $\widetilde{\pi_H}:H/K\to Q$  is injective, and it identifies H/K as a normal subgroup of Q.

# Chapter 6

# **Product and Coproduct of Groups**

## 6.1 Direct product of groups

**Definition 6.1.1.** The *direct product* of a family of groups  $\{G_{\alpha} : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$  is a pair  $(G, \{\pi_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$ , where G is a group and  $\{\pi_{\alpha} : G \to G_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$  is a family of group homomorphisms such that given any group H and a family of group homomorphisms  $\{f_{\alpha} : H \to G_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$  there exists a **unique** group homomorphism  $f : H \to G$  such that  $\pi_{\alpha} \circ f = f_{\alpha}$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ .



**Theorem 6.1.2** (Existence & Uniqueness of Product of Groups). The direct product of a family of groups exists and is unique upto a unique isomorphism in the sense that if  $(G, \{g_\alpha : G \to G_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  and  $(H, \{h_\alpha : H \to G_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  are direct products of the family of groups  $\{G_\alpha : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$ , then there exists a unique isomorphism of groups  $\phi : G \to H$  such that  $h_\alpha \circ \phi = g_\alpha$ , for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ . We denote by  $\prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_\alpha$  the underlying group of the direct product of the family of groups  $\{G_\alpha : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$ .

*Proof.* Since  $(G, \{g_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  is a direct product by assumption, for the test object  $(H, \{h_{\beta} : H \to G_{\beta}\}_{\beta \in \Lambda})$  we have a group homomorphism  $\varphi : G \to H$  such that  $\pi_{\alpha} \circ \varphi = h_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ . Interchanging the roles of  $(G, \{g_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  and  $(H, \{h_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  we have a group homomorphism  $\psi : H \to G$  such that  $\pi_{\alpha} \circ \psi = g_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ . Since both  $\psi \circ \varphi : G \to G$  and  $\mathrm{Id}_G : G \to G$  are group homomorphisms satisfying

$$f_{\alpha} \circ (\psi \circ \varphi) = f_{\alpha} \text{ and } f_{\alpha} \circ \mathrm{Id}_{G} = f_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda,$$

it follows that  $\psi \circ \varphi = \mathrm{Id}_G$ . Similarly,  $\varphi \circ \psi = \mathrm{Id}_H$ , and hence  $\varphi : G \to H$  is the unique isomorphism such that  $h_\alpha \circ \varphi = g_\alpha, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ .

For a construction, let

$$\prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha} := \{ f : \Lambda \to \coprod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha} \, \big| \, f(\alpha) \in G_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda \}.$$

Given  $f,g \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  we define

$$fg:\Lambda \to \coprod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$$

by

$$(fg)(\alpha):=f(\alpha)g(\alpha), \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda.$$

Clearly  $fg \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$ , and  $(fg)h = f(gh), \ \forall \ f,g,h \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$ . Let  $e_{\alpha} \in G_{\alpha}$  be the neutral element, for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ . Then the map  $e : \Lambda \to \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  given by  $e(\alpha) = e_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$  satisfies  $ef = fe = f, \ \forall \ f \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$ . Given  $f \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  we define  $f^{-1} \in \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  by  $f^{-1}(\alpha) = (f_{\alpha})^{-1} \in G_{\alpha}$ ,  $\forall \alpha \in \Lambda$ . Then  $ff^{-1} = e = f^{-1}f$ . Therefore,  $\prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  is a group. For each  $\beta \in \Lambda$ , we define a map  $\pi_{\beta} : \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha} \to G_{\beta}$  by  $\pi_{\beta}(f) = f(\beta)$ . Then  $\pi_{\beta}$  is a group homomorphism. Given a group H and a family  $\{h_{\alpha} : H \to G_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$  of group homomorphisms, we define a map  $\psi : H \to \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  that sends  $a \in H$  to the function  $\psi_a : \Lambda \to \coprod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} G_{\alpha}$  defined by  $\psi_a(\alpha) = h_{\alpha}(a), \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ . Then it is straight forward to verify that  $\psi$  is a group homomorphism satisfying  $\pi_{\alpha} \circ \psi = h_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ .  $\square$ 

**Example 6.1.3 (External Direct Product of**  $G_1, \ldots, G_n$ ). Let  $G_1, \ldots, G_n$  be a finite family of groups, not necessarily distinct. Define a binary operation on the Cartesian product  $G := G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  by

$$(6.1.4) (a_1, \dots, a_n) \cdot (b_1, \dots, b_n) := (a_1 b_1, \dots, a_n b_n),$$

where  $a_i, b_i \in G_i$ , for all i = 1, ..., n. Given  $a_i, b_i, c_i \in G_i$ , for each  $i \in \{1, ..., n\}$ , we have

$$((a_1, \dots, a_n) \cdot (b_1, \dots, b_n)) \cdot (c_1, \dots, c_n) = (a_1b_1, \dots, a_nb_n) \cdot (c_1, \dots, c_n)$$

$$= ((a_1b_1)c_1, \dots, (a_nb_n)c_n)$$

$$= (a_1(b_1c_1), \dots, a_n(b_nc_n))$$

$$= (a_1, \dots, a_n) \cdot ((b_1, \dots, b_n) \cdot (c_1, \dots, c_n))$$

Therefore, the above defined binary operation on the set G is associative. Let  $e_i \in G_i$  be the neutral element of  $G_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, ..., n\}$ . Then given any  $a_i \in G_i$ , for each i, we have

$$(a_1, \ldots, a_n) \cdot (e_1, \ldots, e_n) = (a_1, \ldots, a_n) = (e_1, \ldots, e_n) \cdot (a_1, \ldots, a_n).$$

Since

$$(a_1, \dots, a_n) \cdot (a_1^{-1}, \dots, a_n^{-1}) = (e_1, \dots, e_n) = (a_1^{-1}, \dots, a_n^{-1}) \cdot (a_1, \dots, a_n),$$

we conclude that  $(a_1, \ldots, a_n)^{-1} = (a_1^{-1}, \ldots, a_n^{-1}) \in G$ . Therefore,  $G = G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  is a group with respect to the binary operation defined in (6.1.4).

For each  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ , let

$$(6.1.5) p_i: G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n \to G_i$$

be the map defined by

$$(6.1.6) p_i(a_1,\ldots,a_n) = a_i, \ \forall \ (a_1,\ldots,a_n) \in G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n.$$

Clearly  $p_i$  is a surjective group homomorphism (verify!). Let H be a group and let  $\{f_i: H \to G_i\}_{1 \le i \le n}$  be a family of group homomorphisms. Define a map  $f: H \to G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  by

(6.1.7) 
$$f(h) = (f_1(h), \dots, f_n(h)), \ \forall h \in H.$$

Then given any  $a, b \in H$  we have

$$f(ab) = (f_1(ab), \dots, f_n(ab))$$

$$= (f_1(a)f_1(b), \dots, f_n(a)f_n(b))$$

$$= (f_1(a), \dots, f_n(a))(f_1(b), \dots, f_n(b))$$

$$= f(a)f(b).$$

55

Therefore, f is a group homomorphism. Clearly  $p_i \circ f = f_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ . Suppose that  $f': H \to G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$  is any group homomorphism such that  $p_i \circ f' = f_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ . Let  $h \in H$  be arbitrary. Let  $f'(h) = (a_1, \dots, a_n) \in G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$ . Then  $f_i(h) = (p_i \circ f')(h) = p_i(a_1, \dots, a_n) = a_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ , and hence  $f'(h) = (a_1, \dots, a_n) = (f_1(h), \dots, f_n(h)) = f(h)$ . Therefore, f' = f, and hence by universal property of product of groups (see Definition 6.1.1) we conclude that  $G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$  is a direct product of  $G_1, \dots, G_n$ . The group  $G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$  is also known as the *external direct product of*  $G_1, \dots, G_n$ .

**Corollary 6.1.8.** The direct product of a finite family of finite groups  $G_1, \ldots, G_n$  is a group of order  $|G_1| \cdots |G_n|$ . Moreover,  $G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  is abelian if and only if  $G_i$  is abelian, for all  $i \in I_n$ .

**Exercise 6.1.9.** Given any two groups G and H, show that  $Z(G \times H) = Z(G) \times Z(H)$ .

**Proposition 6.1.10.** Let  $G := G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  be the external direct product of the family of groups  $G_1, \ldots, G_n$ . For each  $i \in I_n := \{1, \ldots, n\}$ , let  $H_i = \{(a_1, \ldots, a_n) \in G : a_j = e_j, \ \forall \ j \neq i\} \subseteq G$ . Then we have the following.

- (i)  $H_i$  is a normal subgroup of G, for all  $i \in I_n$ .
- (ii) Every element  $a \in G$  can be uniquely expressed as  $a = h_1 \cdots h_n$ , with  $h_i \in H_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ .
- (iii)  $H_i \cap (H_1 \cdots H_{i-1} H_{i+1} \cdots H_n) = \{e\}$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ .
- (iv)  $G = H_1 \cdots H_n$ .

Proof. (i) Since  $(e_1,\ldots,e_n)\in H_i$ , so  $H_i\neq\emptyset$ . Let  $a:=(a_1,\ldots,a_n),b:=(b_1,\ldots,b_n)\in H_i$ . Then  $a_j=e_j=b_j,\ \forall\ j\neq i$ , and hence  $a_j^{-1}b_j=e_j$ , for all  $j\neq i$ . Therefore,  $a^{-1}b=(a_1^{-1}b_1,\ldots,a_n^{-1}b_n)\in H_i$ , and hence  $H_i$  is a subgroup of G. Let  $a=(a_1,\ldots,a_n)\in G$  and  $b:=(b_1,\ldots,b_n)\in H_i$  be arbitrary. Then  $b_j=e_j$ , for all  $j\neq i$ , and so  $a_jb_ja_j^{-1}=a_je_ja_j^{-1}=e_j$ , for all  $j\neq i$ . This shows that  $aba^{-1}=(a_1,\ldots,a_n)(b_1,\ldots,b_n)(a_1^{-1},\ldots,a_n^{-1})\in H_i$ . Therefore,  $H_i$  is a normal subgroup of G, for all  $i\in I_n$ .

(ii) Let  $a \in G$  be given. Then  $a = (a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ , where  $a_i \in G_i$ ,  $\forall i \in I_n$ . Let  $h_i \in G$  be the element whose i-th entry is  $a_i$  and for  $j \neq i$ , its j-th entry is  $e_j \in G_j$ . In other words,  $h_i := (h_{i1}, \ldots, h_{in}) \in G$ , where

$$h_{ij} := \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} e_j, & \text{if} & j \neq i, \\ a_i, & \text{if} & j = i. \end{array} \right.$$

Then  $h_i \in H_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ , and  $h_1 \cdots h_n = (a_1, \dots, a_n) = a$ . To show uniqueness of this expression, let  $a = k_1 \cdots k_n$ , where  $k_i \in H_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ . If  $k_{ij} \in G_j$  denote the j-th entry of  $k_i \in H_i$ , then  $k_{ij} = e_j$ , for  $j \neq i$ . Therefore,

$$(a_1,\ldots,a_n)=a=h_1\cdots h_n=k_1\cdots k_n=(k_{11},\ldots,k_{nn}).$$

Then  $a_i = h_{ii}$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ . This shows that  $k_i = h_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ . This proves uniqueness.

(iii) Let  $a=(a_1,\ldots,a_n)\in H_i\cap (H_1\cdots H_{i-1}H_{i+1}\cdots H_n)$ . Since  $a\in H_i$ , we have  $a_j=e_j,\ \forall\ j\neq i.$  Since  $a\in H_1\cdots H_{i-1}H_{i+1}\cdots H_n$ , we have

$$(6.1.11) a = h_1 \cdots h_{i-1} h_{i+1} \cdots h_n$$

for some  $h_j \in H_j$ ,  $\forall j \neq i$ . Since  $h_j = (h_{1j}, \dots, h_{nj}) \in H_j$ , we have

$$h_{kj} = e_k \in G_k, \ \forall \ k \neq j.$$

If  $b_k$  denote the k-th component of the product  $h_1 \cdots h_{i-1} h_{i+1} \cdots h_n$  in  $G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$ , then

(6.1.12) 
$$b_k = \begin{cases} e_i, & \text{if } k = i, \\ h_{kk}, & \text{if } k \neq i. \end{cases}$$

Comparing the j-th component of both sides of the equation (6.1.11), we have

$$a_j = e_j \in G_j, \ \forall \ j \in I_n.$$

(iv) It follows from (ii) that  $G \subseteq H_1 \cdots H_n$ . Since  $H_i$  is a subgroup of G, for all  $i \in I_n$ , we have  $H_1 \cdots H_n \subseteq G$ . Hence the result follows.

**Lemma 6.1.13.** Let G be a group. Let H, K be two normal subgroups of G such that  $H \cap K = \{e\}$  Then given any  $h \in H$  and  $k \in K$  we have hk = kh. Consequently,  $[H, K] = \{e\}$ .

*Proof.* Since H is normal in G, we have  $(hk)(kh)^{-1} = h(kh^{-1}k^{-1}) \in H$ . Similarly, since K is normal in G, we have  $(hk)(kh)^{-1} = (hkh^{-1})k^{-1} \in K$ . Therefore,  $(hk)(kh)^{-1} \in H \cap K = \{e\}$ , and hence hk = kh in G.

**Exercise 6.1.14.** Is the conclusion of the Lemma 6.1.13 still holds if we assume exactly one of H and K is normal in G?

**Lemma 6.1.15.** Let G be a group. Let H and K be normal subgroups of G. Then HK is a normal subgroup of G.

*Proof.* Since H and K are normal in G, it follows that HK is a subgroup of G. Let  $a \in G$  and  $h \in H, k \in K$  be arbitrary. Then  $a(hk)a^{-1} = (aha^{-1})(aka^{-1}) \in HK$ . Therefore, HK is a normal subgroup of G.

**Definition 6.1.16.** Let G be a group and let  $H_1, \ldots, H_n$  be normal subgroups of G. Then G is said to be an *internal direct product of*  $H_1, \ldots, H_n$  if every element  $a \in G$  can be **uniquely** expressed as  $a = h_1 \cdots h_n$  with  $h_i \in H_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ .

**Proposition 6.1.17.** Let  $G = G_1 \times \cdots \times G_n$  be the external direct product of a finite collection of (not necessarily distinct) groups  $G_1, \ldots, G_n$ , and  $H_i := \{(a_1, \ldots, a_n) \in G : a_j = e_j, \ \forall \ j \neq i\}$ , for each  $i \in I_n$ . Then G is an internal direct product of  $H_1, \ldots, H_n$ , respectively.

*Proof.* It follows from Proposition 6.1.10 (ii) that given  $a \in G$  there exists  $a_i \in H_i$ , for each  $i \in I_n$ , such that  $a = a_1 \cdots a_n$ . To show that this expression for a is unique, let

$$a = a_1 \cdots a_n = b_1 \cdots b_n,$$

for some  $a_i, b_i \in H_i$ ,  $\forall i \in I_n$ . Note that each  $H_i$  is a normal subgroup of G by Proposition 6.1.10 (i), and  $K_i := H_1 \cdots H_{i-1} H_{i+1} \cdots H_n$  is a normal subgroups of G by Lemma 6.1.15. Moreover,  $H_i \cap K_i = \{e\}$  by Proposition 6.1.10 (iii). Then using Lemma 6.1.13 we have

$$e = a^{-1}a = (a_1 \cdots a_n)^{-1}b_1 \cdots b_n$$
  
=  $a_n^{-1} \cdots a_1^{-1}b_1 \cdots b_n$   
=  $(a_1^{-1}b_1) \cdots (a_n^{-1}b_n)$ .

Then for each  $i \in I_n$ , we have

$$b_i^{-1}a_i = (a_1^{-1}b_1)\cdots(a_{i-1}^{-1}b_{i-1})(a_{i+1}^{-1}b_{i+1})\cdots(a_n^{-1}b_n) \in H_i \cap K_i = \{e\},\$$

and hence  $a_i = b_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ . This completes the proof.

**Theorem 6.1.18.** Let  $\{H_1, \ldots, H_n\}$  be a finite collection of normal subgroups of G. Let  $K_i := H_1 \cdots H_{i-1} H_{i+1} \cdots H_n, \ \forall \ i \in I_n$ . Then G is an internal direct product of  $H_1, \ldots, H_n$  if and only if

(i) 
$$G = H_1 \cdots H_n$$
, and

(ii) 
$$H_i \cap K_i = \{e\}$$
, for all  $i \in I_n$ .

Moreover, in this case we have an isomorphism of groups  $G \cong H_1 \times \cdots \times H_n$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that G is an internal direct product of  $H_1,\ldots,H_n$ , respectively. Let  $a\in G$  be given. Then for each  $i\in I_n$ , there exists unique  $a_i\in H_i$  such that  $a=a_1\cdots a_n$ . Therefore,  $G\subseteq H_1\cdots H_n$ , and hence  $G=H_1\cdots H_n$ . Let  $a\in H_i\cap K_i$ . Then  $a\in H_i$  gives  $a=e_1\cdots e_{i-1}ae_{i+1}\cdots e_n$ , where  $e_j\in H_j$  is the neutral element of  $H_j$ , for all j. Again,  $a\in K_i=H_1\cdots H_{i-1}H_{i+1}\cdots H_n$  gives  $a=a_1\cdots a_{i-1}ea_{i+1}\cdots a_n$ , where  $a_j\in H_j, \forall\ j\neq i$ . Then form the uniqueness of representation of a as product of elements from  $H_j$ 's, we see that a=e. Therefore,  $H_i\cap K_i=\{e\}$ .

Conversely, suppose that (i) and (ii) holds. By (i) given  $a \in G$ , there exists  $a_i \in H_i$ , for each  $i \in I_n$ , such that  $a = a_1 \cdots a_n$ . Suppose that for each  $i \in I_n$ , there exists  $b_i \in H_i$  such that  $a = b_1 \cdots b_n$ . Then as shown in the proof of the above Proposition, we have

$$e = a^{-1}a = (a_1 \cdots a_n)^{-1}b_1 \cdots b_n$$
  
=  $a_n^{-1} \cdots a_1^{-1}b_1 \cdots b_n$   
=  $(a_1^{-1}b_1) \cdots (a_n^{-1}b_n)$ .

Then for each  $i \in I_n$ , we have

$$b_i^{-1}a_i = (a_1^{-1}b_1)\cdots(a_{i-1}^{-1}b_{i-1})(a_{i+1}^{-1}b_{i+1})\cdots(a_n^{-1}b_n) \in H_i \cap K_i = \{e\},\$$

and hence  $a_i = b_i$ , for all  $i \in I_n$ . This completes the proof.

**Exercise 6.1.19.** Let G be a finite group of order mn, where gcd(m, n) = 1. If H and K are normal subgroups of G of orders m and n, respectively, show that G is isomorphic to the direct product group  $H \times K$ .

**Corollary 6.1.20.** *If*  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  *with* gcd(m, n) = 1*, then*  $\mathbb{Z}_{mn} \cong \mathbb{Z}_m \times \mathbb{Z}_n$ .

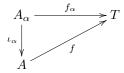
# 6.2 Direct sum (Coproduct) of abelian groups

**Theorem 6.2.1 (Direct Sum of Abelian Groups).** *Let*  $\{A_{\alpha} : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$  *be a family of abelian groups. Then there is a pair*  $(A, \{\iota_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$ *, consisting of a group* A *and a family of group monomorphisms* 

$$\{\iota_{\alpha}: A_{\alpha} \to A\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$$

satisfying the following universal property:

• Given any abelian group T and a family of group homomorphisms  $\{f_{\alpha}: A_{\alpha} \to T\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$ , there exists a unique group homomorphism  $f: A \to T$  such that  $f \circ \iota_{\alpha} = f_{\alpha}, \ \forall \ \alpha \in \Lambda$ .



The pair  $(A, \{\iota_{\alpha}\}_{{\alpha}\in\Lambda})$  is uniquely determined by the universal property, and is called the **direct sum** of the family of groups  $\{A_{\alpha}\}_{{\alpha}\in\Lambda}$ , and is denoted by  $\bigoplus_{{\alpha}\in\Lambda}A_{\alpha}$ .

*Proof.* Uniqueness of the pair  $(A, \{\iota_{\alpha}\}_{{\alpha} \in \Lambda})$  follows from the universal property. We now prove existence. We write the group operation of  $A_{\alpha}$  additively. Given  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ , let  $0_{\alpha}$  be the neutral

element of  $A_{\alpha}$ , and  $\pi_{\alpha}:\prod_{\beta\in\Lambda}A_{\beta}\to A_{\alpha}$  be the natural projection homomorphism. Given  $x\in\prod_{\alpha\in\Lambda}A_{\alpha}$ , let  $x_{\alpha}:=\pi_{\alpha}(x)\in A_{\alpha}$ . Consider the subset

$$A:=\left\{x\in\prod_{\alpha\in\Lambda}A_\alpha\,\big|\,\pi_\alpha(x)=0_\alpha,\ \text{ for all but finitely many }\ \alpha\in\Lambda\right\}.$$

Clearly  $0:=(0_{\alpha})_{\alpha\in\Lambda}\in A$ , and given any  $x,y\in A$ ,  $\pi_{\alpha}(x-y)=x_{\alpha}-y_{\alpha}=0_{\alpha}$ , for all but finitely many  $\alpha\in\Lambda$ , and so  $x-y\in A$ . Therefore, A is a subgroup of  $\prod_{\alpha\in\Lambda}A_{\alpha}$ . For each  $\alpha\in\Lambda$ , let

 $\iota_{\alpha}:A_{\alpha}\to A$  be the map defined by sending  $a\in A_{\alpha}$  to the element  $\iota_{\alpha}(a)=x$ , where

$$\pi_{\beta}(x) := \begin{cases} a, & \text{if } \beta = \alpha, \\ e_{\beta}, & \text{if } \beta \neq \alpha. \end{cases}$$

Clearly  $\iota_{\alpha}$  is an injective group homomorphism, for all  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ . Let T be an abelian group. Let  $f_{\alpha}: A_{\alpha} \to T$  be a group homomorphism, for each  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ . Define a map  $f: A \to T$  by

$$f(a) = \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} f_{\alpha}(\pi_{\alpha}(a)), \ \forall \ a \in A.$$

Note that the above sum is finite. Since  $f_{\alpha}: A_{\alpha} \to T$  is a group homomorphism,  $f_{\alpha}(0_{\alpha}) = 0_{T} \in T$ , and hence  $f(\iota_{\alpha}(g)) = f_{\alpha}(g)$ , for all  $g \in A_{\alpha}$ . Therefore,  $f \circ \iota_{\alpha} = f_{\alpha}$ ,  $\forall \alpha \in \Lambda$ . Uniqueness of f is easy to see (verify!).

Let  $\{A_1, \ldots, A_n\}$  be a finite collection of abelian groups and let  $A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$  be the direct product. Then for each  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$  the natural map

$$\varphi_i: A_i \to A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$$

defined by sending  $a \in A_i$  to the element  $\varphi_i(a) \in A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$  whose *i*-th component is a and all other components are 0, is a group homomorphism. Since  $A_i$ 's are abelian, so is their direct product  $A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$ . Then by universal property of direct sum (Theorem 6.2.1), there is a unique group homomorphism

$$f: A_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus A_n \to A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$$

such that  $f \circ \iota_i = \varphi_i$ , for all  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ . Clearly f is injective; in fact, it is the inclusion map. Given any  $(a_1, \ldots, a_n) \in A_1 \times \cdots \times A_n$ , we have  $f(\sum_{i=1}^n \iota_i(a_i)) = \sum_{i=1}^n \varphi_i(a_i) = (a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ . Therefore, f is surjective, and hence is an isomorphism. Thus, for a finite index set  $\Lambda$ , we have  $\bigoplus_{\alpha \in \Lambda} A_\alpha = \prod_{\alpha \in \Lambda} A_\alpha$ .

**Remark 6.2.2.** If we remove *abelian* hypothesis from  $A_{\alpha}$ 's and also from the test objects T in Theorem 6.2.1, then also the associated pair  $(A, \{\iota_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \Lambda})$  exists, and is known as the *free product* of the family of groups  $\{A_{\alpha} : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$ ; in this case construction of A requires the notion of free groups which will be introduced in §??. In general, construction of free products produce infinite non-abelian groups even for a finite family consisting of at least two non-trivial finite groups, and hence they are different from the direct sum and direct product of groups (see Theorem ??).

**Definition 6.2.3.** Let A be an abelian group. A subset S of A is said to be  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linearly independent if given any finite number of distinct elements  $a_1, \ldots, a_n \in S$ , we have  $r_1a_1 + \cdots + r_na_n = 0$  implies  $r_1 = \cdots = r_n = 0$ .

**Exercise 6.2.4.** Let G and H be cyclic groups of prime order p generated by  $x \in G$  and  $y \in H$ , respectively. Show that  $G \times H$  is an abelian group of order  $p^2$  that is not cyclic. Show that

$$\langle x \rangle, \langle xy \rangle, \langle xy^2 \rangle, \dots, \langle xy^{p-1} \rangle$$
 and  $\langle y \rangle$ 

are all possible distinct subgroups of  $G \times H$  of order p.

**Exercise 6.2.5.** Find the number of distinct subgroups of order p of the cyclic group  $\mathbb{Z}_{p^n}$ , where p > 0 is a prime number and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

# Chapter 7

# **Group Action**

## 7.1 Definition and examples

Let *G* be a group and let *X* be a non-empty set.

**Definition 7.1.1.** A *left G-action* on X is a map

$$\sigma: G \times X \to X$$

satisfying the following conditions:

- (i)  $\sigma(e, x) = x, \ \forall x \in X$ , and
- (ii)  $\sigma(b, \sigma(a, x)) = \sigma(ba, x), \ \forall \ a, b \in G, \ x \in X.$

For notational simplicity, we write ax for  $\sigma(a, x)$ .

**Remark 7.1.2.** We can define a *right G-action* on X to be a map

$$\tau: X \times G \to X$$

satisfying the following conditions:

- (i)  $\tau(x,e) = x, \ \forall \ x \in X$ , and
- (ii)  $\tau(\tau(x,a),b) = \tau(x,ab), \ \forall a,b \in G, \ x \in X.$

For notational simplicity, we write xa for  $\tau(a, x)$ .

**Example 7.1.3.** (i) Given a group G and a non-empty set X, the map

$$\sigma: G \times X \to X$$

defined by

$$\sigma(a,x) = x, \ \forall \ a \in G \ \text{and} \ \ x \in X,$$

is a left G-action on X, known as the *trivial left G-action on X*. Similarly, we have a trivial right G-action  $\tau: X \times G \to X$  on X that sends  $(x,a) \in X \times G$  to  $x \in X$ .

- (ii) For each integer  $n \geq 2$ , the group  $S_n$  acts on the set  $I_n := \{k \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq k \leq n\}$  by sending  $(\sigma,i) \in S_n \times I_n$  to  $\sigma(i) \in I_n$ . Clearly for  $\sigma = e \in S_n$  we have  $\sigma(i) = i, \ \forall \ i \in I_n$ , and  $(\sigma\tau)(i) = \sigma(\tau(i)), \ \forall \ i \in I_n, \ \sigma, \tau \in S_n$ .
- (iii) Given a non-empty set X, let S(X) be the group of all symmetries on X; its elements are bijective maps from X onto itself, and the group operation is given by composition of maps. Then the group S(X) acts on X from the left.

(iv) Let H be a normal subgroup of a group G. For example, H=Z(G). Then the map  $\varphi:G\times H\to H$  defined by

$$\varphi(a,h) = aha^{-1}, \ \forall \ a \in G, \ h \in H,$$

is a *G*-action on *H*. Indeed,  $\varphi(e,h) = ehe^{-1} = h$ ,  $\forall h \in H$ , and

$$\varphi(a,\varphi(b,h)) = \varphi(a,bhb^{-1}) = a(bhb^{-1})a^{-1} = (ab)h(ab)^{-1} = \varphi(ab,h), \ \forall \ a,b \in G, \ h \in H.$$

**Lemma 7.1.4** (Permutation representation of a G-action). Given a group G and a non-empty set X, there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of all left G-actions on X and the set of all group homomorphisms from G into the symmetric group S(X) on X.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathscr A$  be the set of all left G-actions on X, and let  $\mathscr B:=\operatorname{Hom}(G,S(X))$  be the set of all group homomorphisms from G into S(X). Define a map  $\Phi:\mathscr A\to\mathscr B$  by sending a left G-action  $\sigma:G\times X\to X$  to the map

$$(7.1.5) f_{\sigma}: G \to S(X)$$

that sends  $a \in G$  to the map

(7.1.6) 
$$f_{\sigma}(a): X \to X, \ x \mapsto \sigma(a, x).$$

We first show that  $f_{\sigma}(a)$  is bijective and hence is an element of  $\in S(X)$ . Let  $x, y \in X$  be such that  $\sigma(a, x) = \sigma(a, y)$ . Then we have

$$x = \sigma(e, x) = \sigma(a^{-1}, \sigma(a, x))$$
$$= \sigma(a^{-1}, \sigma(a, y))$$
$$= \sigma(e, y) = y.$$

Therefore,  $f_{\sigma}(a)$  is injective. Given  $y \in X$ , note that  $x := \sigma(a^{-1}, y) \in X$ , and that

$$f_{\sigma}(a)(x) = \sigma(a, x) = \sigma(a, \sigma(a^{-1}, y)) = \sigma(e, y) = y.$$

This shows that  $\sigma_a$  is surjective. Therefore,  $f_{\sigma}(a) \in S(X)$ , for all  $a \in G$ . To show  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(X)$  is a group homomorphism, note that given  $a,b \in G$  we have

$$\begin{split} f_{\sigma}(ab)(x) &= \sigma(ab,x) = \sigma(a,\sigma(b,x)) \\ &= f_{\sigma}(a)(f_{\sigma}(b)(x)) \\ &= (f_{\sigma}(a) \circ f_{\sigma}(b))(x), \ \forall \ x \in X, \end{split}$$

and hence  $f_{\sigma}(ab) = f_{\sigma}(a) \circ f_{\sigma}(b), \ \forall \ a,b \in G$ . Therefore,  $f_{\sigma}$  is a group homomorphism, known as the *permutation representation* of G associated to the left G-action  $\sigma$  on X. Thus,  $f_{\sigma} \in \mathcal{B}$ .

Given a group homomorphism  $f:G\to S(X)$ , consider the map  $\sigma_f:G\times X\to X$  defined by

$$\sigma_f(a,x) = f(a)(x), \ \forall \ a \in G, x \in X.$$

We show that  $\sigma_f$  is a left G-action on X. Since  $f:G\to S(X)$  is a group homomorphism,  $f(e)=\operatorname{Id}_X$  in S(X). Therefore,  $\sigma_f(e,x)=f(e)(x)=x,\ \forall\ x\in X.$  Since  $f:G\to S(X)$  is a group homomorphism, given  $a,b\in G$  we have  $f(ab)=f(a)\circ f(b)$ , and hence given any  $x\in X$  we have

$$f(ab)(x) = (f(a) \circ f(b))(x)$$
  

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_f(ab, x) = f(a)(\sigma_f(b, x))$$
  

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_f(ab, x) = \sigma_f(a, \sigma_f(b, x)).$$

Therefore,  $\sigma_f$  is a left *G*-action on *X*. Thus we get a map  $\Psi: \mathcal{B} \to \mathscr{A}$  defined by

$$\Psi(f) = \sigma_f, \ \forall \ f \in \mathscr{B}.$$

It remains to check that  $\Psi \circ \Phi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathscr{A}}$  and  $\Phi \circ \Psi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathscr{B}}$ . Given a left G-action  $\tau : G \times X \to X$  on X, we have  $(\Psi \circ \Phi)(\tau) = \Psi(f_{\tau}) = \sigma_{f_{\tau}}$ . Since

$$\sigma_{f_{\tau}}(a,x) = f_{\tau}(a)(x) = \tau(a,x), \ \forall \ (a,x) \in G \times X,$$

we have  $(\Psi \circ \Phi)(\tau) = \tau$ ,  $\forall \tau \in \mathscr{A}$ . Therefore,  $\Psi \circ \Phi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathscr{A}}$ . Conversely, given a group homomorphism  $g: G \to S(X)$ , we have  $(\Phi \circ \Psi)(g) = \Phi(\sigma_g) = f_{\sigma_g}$ . Since  $f_{\sigma_g}(a) = \sigma_g(a, -) = g(a)$ ,  $\forall a \in G$ , we conclude that  $(\Phi \circ \Psi)(g) = g$ ,  $\forall g \in \mathscr{B}$ . Therefore,  $\Phi \circ \Psi = \operatorname{Id}_{\mathscr{B}}$ . This completes the proof.

**Definition 7.1.7** (Faithful action). A left G-action  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  on a non-empty set X is said to be *faithful* if  $\mathrm{Ker}(f_{\sigma}) = \{e\}$ , where  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(X)$  is the permutation representation of G associated to  $\sigma$  (see (7.1.5) and (7.1.6) in Lemma 7.1.4).

**Example 7.1.8.** The multiplicative group  $\mathbb{R}^* := \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$  acts on  $V := \mathbb{R}^n$  by scalar multiplication

$$\sigma: \mathbb{R}^* \times V \to V$$

defined by

$$\sigma(t,(a_1,\ldots,a_n)):=(ta_1,\ldots,ta_n), \ \forall \ t\in\mathbb{R}^*,\ (a_1,\ldots,a_n)\in\mathbb{R}^n.$$

Note that  $\sigma$  is a left  $\mathbb{R}^*$ -action on  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ . The permutation representation

$$f_{\sigma}: \mathbb{R}^* \to S(V)$$

associated to  $\sigma$  is given by sending  $t \in \mathbb{R}^*$  to the map

$$f_{\sigma}(t): V \to V, (a_1, \ldots, a_n) \mapsto (ta_1, \ldots, ta_n).$$

Since

$$\operatorname{Ker}(f_{\sigma}) = \{ t \in \mathbb{R}^* : f_{\sigma}(t) = \operatorname{Id}_V \}$$
$$= \{ t \in \mathbb{R}^* : tv = v, \ \forall \ v \in V \}$$
$$= \{ 1 \}$$

is trivial, we conclude that  $\sigma$  is a faithful left  $\mathbb{R}^*$ -action on  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Example 7.1.9.** Recall that Cayley's theorem (Theorem 3.3.6) says that any group G is isomorphic to a subgroup of the permutation group S(G) on G. This can be explained using group action as follow. Consider the left translation map

$$\sigma:G\times G\to G$$

defined by

$$\sigma(a, x) = ax, \ \forall \ a, x \in G.$$

Note that  $\sigma$  is a left G-action on itself, called the *left regular action of* G *on itself*, and the associated permutation representation  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(G)$  that sends  $a \in G$  to the bijective map

$$f_{\sigma}(a): G \to G, \ x \mapsto ax,$$

Then  $f_{\sigma}$  is a group homomorphism with

$$\operatorname{Ker}(f_{\sigma}) = \{ a \in G : f_{\sigma}(a) = \operatorname{Id}_{G} \}$$
$$= \{ a \in G : ax = x, \ \forall \ x \in G \}$$
$$= \{ e_{G} \}$$

is trivial, and hence  $\sigma$  is a faithful action.

### 7.2 Orbits and isotropy subgroups

Given a left *G*-action  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  on *X*, we define a relation  $\sim_{\sigma}$  on *X* by setting

(7.2.1) 
$$x \sim_{\sigma} y \text{ if } y = \sigma(a, x), \text{ for some } a \in G.$$

Note that  $\sim_{\sigma}$  is an equivalence relation on X (verify!). The  $\sim_{\sigma}$ -equivalence class of  $x \in X$  is the subset

(7.2.2) 
$$\operatorname{Orb}_{G}(x) := \{ \sigma(a, x) : a \in G \} \subseteq X,$$

called the *orbit* of x under the left G-action  $\sigma$  on X. Note that

- (i)  $x \in Orb_G(x), \forall x \in X$ , and
- (ii) given  $x, y \in X$ , either  $\operatorname{Orb}_G(x) = \operatorname{Orb}_G(y)$  or  $\operatorname{Orb}_G(x) \cap \operatorname{Orb}_G(y) = \emptyset$ .

Therefore, X is a disjoint union of distinct G-orbits of elements of X. A G-action  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  is said to be *transitive* if  $\mathrm{Orb}_G(x) = \mathrm{Orb}_G(y)$ , for all  $x, y \in X$ . Therefore,  $\sigma$  is transitive if and only if given any two elements  $x, y \in X$ , there exists  $a \in G$  such that  $\sigma(a, x) = y$ .

**Proposition 7.2.3.** *Let*  $\sigma : G \times X \to X$  *be a left G-action on* X. *For each*  $x \in X$  *the subset* 

$$G_x := \{ a \in G : \sigma(a, x) = x \}$$

is a subgroup of G, called the stabilizer or the isotropy subgroup of x, and sometimes it is also denoted by  $\operatorname{Stab}_G(x)$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\sigma(e,x)=x$ ,  $e\in G_x$ . Let  $a,b\in G_x$  be arbitrary. Then  $x=\sigma(a,x)$  gives

$$\sigma(a^{-1}, x) = \sigma(a^{-1}, \sigma(a, x)) = \sigma(a^{-1}a, x) = \sigma(e, x) = x.$$

Since  $\sigma(b,x)=x$ , we have  $\sigma(a^{-1}b,x)=\sigma(a^{-1},\sigma(b,x))=\sigma(a^{-1},x)=x$ . Therefore,  $a^{-1}b\in G_x$ . Thus  $G_x$  is a subgroup of G.

**Exercise 7.2.4.** Let  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  be a left G-action on X. If  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(X)$  is the group homomorphism induced by  $\sigma$ , then show that  $\operatorname{Ker}(f_{\sigma}) = \bigcap_{x \in X} G_x$ , where  $G_x$  is the isotropy subgroup of  $x \in X$ .

**Corollary 7.2.5.** Let X be a non-empty set equipped with a left G-action  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$ . Let H be a normal subgroup of G. Then the G-action  $\sigma$  induces a left G/H-action  $\widetilde{\sigma}: (G/H) \times X \to X$  making the following diagram commutative

$$G \times X \xrightarrow{\sigma} X$$

$$\pi_H \times \operatorname{Id}_X \mid \qquad \qquad \parallel$$

$$(G/H) \times X \xrightarrow{\widetilde{\sigma}} X$$

if and only if  $H \subseteq \bigcap_{x \in X} G_x$ , where  $G_x := \{g \in G : \sigma(g,x) = x\}, \ \forall \ x \in X.$ 

*Proof.* Let  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(X)$  be the permutation representation of G in S(X) associated to the G-action  $\sigma$  on X. Note that  $\operatorname{Ker}(f_{\sigma}) = \bigcap_{x \in X} G_x$ .

Let H be a normal subgroup of G. Let  $\pi_H: G \to G/H$  be the associated quotient group homomorphism. Suppose that  $H \subseteq \bigcap_{x \in X} G_x = \operatorname{Ker}(f_\sigma)$ . Then by universal property of quotient,

there exists a unique group homomorphism  $\widetilde{f_\sigma}:G/H\to S(X)$  such that  $\widetilde{f_\sigma}\circ\pi_H=f_\sigma$ . Then  $\widetilde{f_\sigma}$  induces a left G/H-action  $\widetilde{\sigma}:(G/H)\times X\to X$  which sends  $(aH,x)\in (G/H)\times X$  to  $\widetilde{\sigma}(aH,x):=\widetilde{f_\sigma}(aH)(x)=f_\sigma(a)(x)=\sigma(a,x)\in X$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $\widetilde{\sigma}:(G/H)\times X\to X$  be a left G/H-action on X making the above diagram commutative. Let

$$f_{\widetilde{\sigma}}: G/H \to S(X)$$

be the permutation representation of G/H into S(X) associated to  $\widetilde{\sigma}$ . Then  $\sigma$  can be recovered from the group homomorphism

$$G \xrightarrow{\pi_H} G/H \xrightarrow{f_{\widetilde{\sigma}}} S(X)$$

using the construction given in Lemma 7.1.4. From this, we have  $H \subseteq \text{Ker}(f_{\sigma})$ .

**Exercise 7.2.6.** Let  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  be a left G-action on X. Given  $x \in X$  and  $a \in G$ , show that  $G_y = aG_xa^{-1}$ , where  $y = \sigma(a,x) \in X$ . Deduce that if  $\sigma$  is a transitive G-action on X, show that  $\operatorname{Ker}(f_\sigma) = \bigcap_{a \in G} aG_xa^{-1}$ .

**Exercise 7.2.7.** Let X be a non-empty set. Let G be a subgroup of the symmetric group S(X) on X. Given  $\sigma \in G$  and  $x \in X$  we have  $\sigma G_x \sigma^{-1} = G_{\sigma(x)}$ . Deduce that if G acts transitively on X, then  $\bigcap_{\sigma \in G} \sigma G_x \sigma^{-1} = \{e\}$ .

**Corollary 7.2.8** (Generalized Cayley's Theorem). Let H be a subgroup of G, and let  $X = \{aH : a \in G\}$  be the set of all distinct left cosets of H in G. Let S(X) be the symmetric group on the set X. Then there exists a group homomorphism  $\varphi : G \to S(X)$  such that  $\operatorname{Ker}(\varphi) \subseteq H$ .

*Proof.* Consider the map  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  defined by

$$\sigma(a, bH) = (ab)H, \ \forall \ a \in G, bH \in X.$$

If bH=cH, for some  $b,c\in G$ , then given any  $a\in G$ , we have  $(ab)^{-1}(ac)=b^{-1}a^{-1}ac=b^{-1}c\in H$ . Therefore,  $\sigma$  is well-defined. Note that  $\sigma(e,bH)=bH,\ \forall\ bH\in X$ , and  $\sigma(a_1,\sigma(a_2,bH))=\sigma(a_1,a_2bH)=(a_1a_2b)H=\sigma(a_1a_2,bH)$ , for all  $a_1,a_2\in G$  and  $bH\in X$ . Therefore,  $\sigma$  is a left G-action on X. Then  $\sigma$  give rise to the group homomorphism

$$f_{\sigma}:G\to S(X)$$

that sends  $a \in G$  to the map

$$\sigma(a,-): X \to X, \ x \mapsto \sigma(a,x).$$

Since  $Ker(f_{\sigma}) \subseteq G_x$ , for all  $x \in X$  by Exercise 7.2.4, taking  $x = H \in X$  we see that

$$G_H = \{a \in G : \sigma(a, H) = H\} = \{a \in G : a \in H\} = H,$$

and hence  $Ker(f_{\sigma}) \subseteq H$ .

**Exercise 7.2.9.** Let H be a subgroup of G, and let X be the set of all left cosets of H in X. Let  $\sigma: G\times X\to X$  be the left G-action on X defined by  $\sigma(a,bH)=(ab)H,\ \forall\ a,b\in G$ . Show that  $\sigma$  is a transitive action.

**Exercise 7.2.10.** Let G be a group and H a subgroup of G with  $[G:H]=n<\infty$ . Show that there is a normal subgroup K of G with  $K\subseteq H$  and  $[G:K]\leq n!$ .

**Corollary 7.2.11** (Cayley's Theorem). Any group G is isomorphic to a subgroup of the symmetric group S(G) on G.

*Proof.* Take  $H = \{e\}$  in Corollary 7.2.8.

**Exercise 7.2.12.** Let G be a group of order 2n, where  $n \ge 1$  is an odd integer. Show that G has a normal subgroup of order n.

Solution: By Cayley's theorem (Theorem 3.3.6) G is isomorphic to a subgroup, say H, of the symmetric group S(G) via the monomorphism  $\varphi:G\to S(G)\cong S_{2n}$  defined by sending  $a\in G$  to the bijective map  $\varphi_a:G\to G$  that sends  $b\in G$  to ab, for all  $b\in G$ . Since 2 divides |G|=2n, G has an element, say  $a\in G$ , of order 2 by Exercise 1.2.37. Since for any  $b\in G$  we have  $\varphi_a(b)=ab$  and  $\varphi_a(ab)=a^2b=eb=b$ , we see that  $\varphi_a\in S(G)$  is a product of transpositions of the form  $(b\ ab)$ . Since |G|=2n, the number of transpositions appearing in the factorization of  $\varphi_a$  is n, an odd number. So  $\varphi_a$  is an odd permutation. This shows that the subgroup  $H:=\varphi(G)$  contains an odd permutation. Define a map

$$f: H \to \{-1, 1\}$$

by sending  $\sigma \in H$  to

$$f(\sigma) := \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is an even permutation,} \\ -1, & \text{if } \sigma \text{ is an odd permutation.} \end{array} \right.$$

Note that f is a surjective group homomorphism, and hence by first isomorphism theorem (Theorem 5.1.3) we have

$$H/\mathrm{Ker}(f) \cong \{-1, 1\}.$$

Then we have

$$2 = |\{-1,1\}| = |H/\mathrm{Ker}(f)| = \frac{|H|}{|\mathrm{Ker}(f)|} = \frac{2n}{|\mathrm{Ker}(f)|}.$$

Therefore,  $\operatorname{Ker}(f)$  is a normal subgroup of H of order  $|\operatorname{Ker}(f)| = n$ . Since  $G \cong H$  via  $\varphi$ , taking inverse image of  $\operatorname{Ker}(f) \subseteq H$  along the isomorphism  $\varphi$  we get a required normal subgroup of G of order n.

**Corollary 7.2.13.** Let G be a finite group of order n. Let p > 0 be a smallest prime number that divides n. If H is subgroup of G with [G:H] = p, then H is normal in G.

*Proof.* Let H be a subgroup of index p in G. Let  $X := \{aH : a \in G\}$  be the set of all distinct left cosets of H in G. Then |X| = p. Let  $f : G \to S(X)$  be the map that sends  $a \in G$  to

$$f(a): X \to X, \ bH \mapsto (ab)H.$$

Then f is a group homomorphism. Then  $K := \operatorname{Ker}(f) \subseteq H$  by Corollary 7.2.8, and  $[G:K] = [G:H] \cdot [H:K] = pk$ , where k := [H:K]. Since |X| = [G:H] = p, the quotient group G/K is isomorphic to a subgroup of the symmetric group  $S_p$  by first isomorphism theorem (see Theorem 5.1.3). Then by Lagrange's theorem pk = |G/K| divides  $|S_p| = p!$ . Then k divides (p-1)!. Since k is a divisor of n and p is the smallest prime divisor of n, unless k = 1, any prime divisor of k must be greater than or equal to p. But since k divides (p-1)!, any prime divisor of k is less than p. Thus we get a contradiction unless k = 1. Therefore, [H:K] = k = 1, and so  $H = K = \operatorname{Ker}(f)$ . Thus H is a normal subgroup of G.

**Warning:** The above Corollary 7.2.13 does not ensure existence of a subgroup H of G of index smallest prime factor of |G|.

**Exercise 7.2.14.** Let G be a finite group of order  $p^n$ , for some prime number p and integer n > 0. Show that every subgroup of G of index p is normal in G. Deduce that every group of order  $p^2$  has a normal subgroup of order p.

**Exercise 7.2.15.** Let G be a non-abelian group of order G. Show that G has a non-normal subgroup of order G. Use this to classify groups of order G. (*Hint:* Produce a monomorphism into G<sub>3</sub>).

**Proposition 7.2.16.** Let  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  be a left G-action on X. Fix  $x \in X$ , and let  $G/G_x = \{aG_x : a \in G\}$  be the set of all distinct left cosets of  $G_x$  in G. Then the map  $\varphi: G/G_x \to \operatorname{Orb}_G(x)$  defined by  $\varphi(aG_x) = \sigma(a,x), \ \forall \ a \in G$ , is a well-defined bijective map. Consequently,  $[G:G_x] = |\operatorname{Orb}_G(x)|$ .

*Proof.* Let  $a,b \in G$  be such that  $aG_x = bG_x$ . Then  $a^{-1}b \in G_x$ , and so  $\sigma(a^{-1}b,x) = x$ . Applying  $\sigma(a,-)$  both sides, we have  $\sigma(b,x) = \sigma(a,\sigma(a^{-1}b,x)) = \sigma(a,x)$ . Therefore, the map  $\varphi$  is well-defined. To show that  $\varphi$  is injective, suppose that  $\sigma(a,x) = \sigma(b,x)$ , for some  $a,b \in G$ . Then  $\sigma(a^{-1}b,x) = \sigma(a^{-1},\sigma(b,x)) = \sigma(a^{-1},\sigma(a,x)) = \sigma(e,x) = x$ . Therefore,  $a^{-1}b \in G_x$ , and hence  $aG_x = bG_x$ . Thus  $\varphi$  is injective. To show  $\varphi$  is surjective, note that  $\sigma(a,x) = \varphi(aG_x)$ , for all  $a \in G$ . Therefore,  $\varphi$  is bijective.  $\square$ 

**Corollary 7.2.17** (Class Equation). Let  $\sigma: G \times X \to X$  be a left G-action on a non-empty finite set X, and let  $\mathcal{O}$  be a subset of X containing exactly one element from each G-orbits in X. Then we have

$$|X| = \sum_{x \in \mathcal{O}} [G : G_x].$$

*Proof.* Since  $X = \bigsqcup_{x \in \mathcal{O}} \operatorname{Orb}_G(x)$ , the result follows from Proposition 7.2.16.

**Exercise 7.2.18.** Let G be a group. Let H be a subgroup of G such that |H| = 11 and [G : H] = 4. Show that H is a normal subgroup of G.

**Exercise 7.2.19.** Fix  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Show that the map  $\sigma : GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \times \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  defined by

$$\sigma(A, v) = Av, \ \forall \ A \in \mathrm{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}), \ v = (v_1, \dots, v_n)^t \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

is a left  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ -action on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Is  $\sigma$  transitive? Find the set of all  $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ -orbits in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Exercise 7.2.20.** Let  $\sigma: G \times G \to G$  be the left G-action on itself given by

$$\sigma(a,b) = aba^{-1}, \ \forall \ a,b \in G.$$

If  $f_{\sigma}: G \to S(G)$  is the permutation representation of G associated to  $\sigma$ , show that  $Ker(f_{\sigma}) = Z(G)$ .

**Theorem 7.2.21** (Burnside's Theorem). Let G be a finite group acting from the left on a non-empty finite set X. Then the number of distinct G-orbits in X is equal to

$$\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{a \in G} F(a),$$

where  $F(a) = \#\{x \in X : ax = x\}$ , the number of elements of X fixed by a.

*Proof.* Let  $T:=\{(a,x)\in G\times X: ax=x\}$ . Note that  $|T|=\sum_{a\in G}F(a)$ . Also  $|T|=\sum_{x\in X}|G_x|$ , where  $G_x$  is the stabilizer of  $x\in X$ . Let  $\{x_1,\ldots,x_n\}$  be the subset of X consisting of exactly one element from each of the G-orbits in X. Note that two elements x and y of X are in the

same *G*-orbit if and only if  $\operatorname{Orb}_G(x) = \operatorname{Orb}_G(y)$ . Since  $|G|/|G_x| = [G:G_x] = |\operatorname{Orb}_G(x)|$ , we conclude that  $|G_x| = |G_y|$  whenever x and y are in the same G-orbit. Then we have

$$\sum_{a \in G} F(a) = |T| = \sum_{x \in X} |G_x|$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n |\operatorname{Orb}_G(x_i)| |G_{x_i}|$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n |G| = n|G|,$$

and hence  $n = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{a \in G} F(a)$ . This completes the proof.

## 7.3 Class equation for conjugacy action

Let *G* be a group. Consider the map

(7.3.1) 
$$\sigma: G \times G \to G, \ (a,b) \mapsto aba^{-1}.$$

Note that  $\sigma$  is a left action of G on itself, known as the conjugation action. Given  $a \in G$ , its  $\sigma$ -stabilizer

$$G_a = \{g \in G : gag^{-1} = a\} = \{g \in G : ga = ag\}.$$

is a subgroup of G, called the *centralizer* or the *normalizer* of a in G. The equivalence relation  $\sim_{\sigma}$  on G induced by the conjugation action of G on itself is known as the *conjugate* relation on G. An element  $b \in G$  is said to be a *conjugate* of  $a \in G$  if there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $b = gag^{-1}$ . Given  $a \in G$ , its G-orbit

(7.3.2) 
$$\operatorname{Orb}_{G}(a) = \{gag^{-1} : g \in G\}$$

consists of all conjugates of *a* in *G*, and is called the *conjugacy class of a in G*.

**Definition 7.3.3.** A partition of an integer  $n \ge 1$  is a finite sequence of positive integers  $(n_1, \ldots, n_r)$  such that  $n_1 \ge \cdots \ge n_r$  and  $\sum_{j=1}^r n_j = n$ .

**Exercise 7.3.4.** Fix an integer  $n \geq 2$ . Show that the number of conjugacy classes in  $S_n$  is the number of partitions of n.

Solution: Let  $\mathcal{C}=\{C_1,\ldots,C_k\}$  be the set of all distinct conjugacy classes in  $S_n$ . Let  $\mathcal{P}_n$  be the set of all partitions of n. Define a map  $t:\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{P}_n$  by sending  $C_i\in\mathcal{C}$  to the cycle type of an element of  $C_i$ , for all i. Since two elements of  $S_n$  are conjugate in  $S_n$  if and only if they have the same cycle type by Theorem 2.2.18, the map t is well-defined and injective. Given a partition  $(n_1,\ldots,n_r)$  of n, we have a permutation  $\sigma=(1\ \cdots\ n_1)\circ\cdots\circ(n_1+\cdots+n_{r-1}+1\ \cdots\ n_1+\cdots+n_r)\in S_n$  whose cycle type is precisely  $(n_1,\ldots,n_r)$ . Therefore, t is surjective, and hence is bijective, as required.

More generally, G acts on its power set  $X := \mathcal{P}(G)$  by conjugation:

(7.3.5) 
$$\sigma: G \times \mathcal{P}(G) \to \mathcal{P}(G), \ (a, S) \mapsto aSa^{-1},$$

where

$$aSa^{-1} := \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \{aga^{-1} \in G : g \in S\}, & \text{if} \quad S \neq \emptyset, \text{ and} \\ \emptyset, & \text{if} \quad S = \emptyset. \end{array} \right.$$

Two non-empty subset S and T of G are said to be conjugates if there exists  $a \in G$  such that  $T = aSa^{-1}$ . Given a subset  $S \subseteq G$ , its stabilizer

$$(7.3.6) N_G(S) := \{ a \in G : aSa^{-1} = S \}$$

for the conjugation action in (7.3.5), is a subgroup of G, known as the *normalizer* of S in G. Then we have the following.

**Corollary 7.3.7.** Let S be a non-empty subset of G. Then the number of distinct conjugates of S in G is the index  $[G:N_G(S)]$ . In particular, the number of distinct conjugates of an element  $a \in G$  is  $[G:C_G(a)]$ , where  $C_G(a)$  is the centralizer of a in G.

*Proof.* Follows from Proposition 7.2.16.

**Exercise 7.3.8.** Let  $\sigma = (k_1 \cdots k_r) \in S_n$  be a r-cycle in  $S_n$ . Let  $I_n \setminus \sigma := I_n \setminus \{k_1, \dots, k_r\} \subset I_n$ , and let

$$S(I_n \setminus \sigma) := \left\{ \tau \in S_n : \tau \big|_{\{k_1, \dots, k_r\}} = \operatorname{Id}_{\{k_1, \dots, k_r\}} \right\}.$$

- (i) Show that  $S(I_n \setminus \sigma)$  is a subgroup of  $S_n$ .
- (ii) Show that  $|C_{S_n}(\sigma)| = r(n-r)!$ .
- (iii) Deduce that  $C_{S_n}(\sigma) = \{\sigma^i \tau \in S_n : \tau \in S(I_n \setminus \sigma)\}$ . (*Hint:* Note that  $\sigma$  commutes with  $e, \sigma, \ldots, \sigma^{r-1}$ , and with all  $\tau \in S_n$  whose cycles are disjoint from that of  $\sigma$  (precisely elements of  $S(I_n \setminus \sigma)$ ). Then use part (ii).)
- (iv) Compute  $C_{S_7}(\sigma)$ , where  $\sigma = (1 \ 2 \ 3) \in S_7$ .

**Exercise 7.3.9.** Let G be a group and S a non-empty subset of G. If H is the subgroup of G generated by S, show that  $N_G(S) \leq N_G(H)$ .

Note that given  $a \in G$  we have  $C_G(a) = G$  if and only if  $a \in Z(G)$ . Therefore, we have the following.

**Theorem 7.3.10** (Class Equation). Let G be a finite group, and let  $\{a_1, \ldots, a_n\}$  be the subset of G consisting of exactly one element from each conjugacy class that are not contained in Z(G). Then we have

$$|G| = |Z(G)| + \sum_{i=1}^{n} [G : C_G(a_i)].$$

*Proof.* Follows from Corollary 7.2.17 by taking X = G and  $\sigma$  to be the conjugation action of G on itself.

**Corollary 7.3.11.** *Let* G *be a group of order*  $p^n$ , where p > 0 *is a prime number and*  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then G *has non-trivial center.* 

*Proof.* The class equation (see Theorem 7.3.10) for the conjugacy action of G on itself gives

$$p^n = |G| = |Z(G)| + \sum_{i=1}^r [G : C_G(a_i)],$$

where  $\{a_1,\ldots,a_n\}$  is a subset consisting of exactly one element from each conjugacy class that are not in the center Z(G). Since  $C_G(a_i)$  is a subgroup of G, by Lagrange's theorem  $|C_G(a_i)|$  divides  $|G|=p^n$ , and hence its index  $[G:C_G(a_i)]=|G|/|C_G(a_i)|$  is of the form  $p^{n_i}$ , for some  $n_i\in\mathbb{N}\cup\{0\}$ . Since  $a_i\notin Z(G)$ , we have  $C_G(a_i)\neq G$ , and so  $n_i\geq 1$ , for all i. Since Z(G) is a subgroup of G, we have  $|Z(G)|\geq 1$ . Then by above class equation we see that

$$|Z(G)| = p^n - \sum_{i=1}^r p^{n_i}$$
 is divisible by  $p$ . Therefore,  $Z(G) \neq \{e\}$ .

**Corollary 7.3.12.** Let G be a group of order  $p^2$ , where p > 0 is a prime number. Then G is isomorphic to either  $\mathbb{Z}_{p^2}$  or  $\mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ .

*Proof.* Since  $Z(G) \neq \{e\}$  by Corollary 7.3.11, we see that G/Z(G) has order p or 1, and hence is cyclic. Then G is abelian by Exercise 4.4.5. If G has an element of order  $p^2$ , then G is cyclic. Suppose that G has no element of order  $p^2$ . Then every non-neutral element of G has order p. Fix an  $a \in G \setminus \{e\}$ , and take  $b \in G \setminus \langle a \rangle$ . Then we have  $|\langle a, b \rangle| > |\langle a \rangle| = p$ , and hence  $\langle a, b \rangle = G$ . Since both a and b has order b, it follows that  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Note that both  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$  and  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Note that both  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$  and  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$  is either  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . If  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$  is either  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . If  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . If  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Since  $b \in \mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z$ 

$$|HK| = \frac{|H|\cdot |K|}{|H\cap K|} = p^2 = |G|$$

by Lemma 1.4.7, we have G = HK. Then  $G \cong H \times K$  by Theorem 6.1.18.

**Proposition 7.3.13.** *Let* G *be a finite abelian group of order*  $n \ge 2$ . *If* p > 0 *is a prime number dividing* n, then G has an element of order p.

*Proof.* We prove this by induction on n=|G|. The case n=2 is trivial. Assume that n>2, and the result holds for any abelian group of order r with  $2 \le r < n$ . Let  $a \in G \setminus \{e\}$  be given. If  $\langle a \rangle = G$ , then we are done by Proposition 1.3.14. Assume that  $H := \langle a \rangle$  is a proper non-trivial subgroup of G. Let  $m := \operatorname{ord}(a)$ . Then 1 < m < n. If  $p \mid m$ , then by induction hypothesis H has an element, say b, of order p, and we are done. Assume that  $p \nmid m$ . Since G is abelian, H is a normal subgroup of G. Then p divides the order of the quotient group G/H. Since |G/H| = n/m < n, by induction hypothesis G/H has an element, say  $bH \in G/H$ , of order p. Then  $b^pH = (bH)^p = H$  in G/H, and so  $b^p \in H$ . Since  $H = \langle a \rangle$  is a cyclic group of order m, we have  $(b^m)^p = (b^p)^m = e$ . Then  $\operatorname{ord}(b^m) \mid p$ . Since p is a prime number, either  $b^m = e$  or  $\operatorname{ord}(b^m) = p$ . If  $b^m = e$ , then  $(bH)^m = b^mH = eH = H$ , and so  $p = \operatorname{ord}(bH) \mid m$ . This contradicts our assumption that  $p \nmid m$ . Therefore,  $b^m \neq e$ , and hence  $\operatorname{ord}(b^m) = p$ .

**Theorem 7.3.14** (Cauchy). Let G be a finite group of order n. Then for each prime number p > 0 dividing n, G has an element of order p.

*Proof.* Fix a prime number p > 0 that divides n. The case n = 2 is trivial. Suppose that n > 2, and the statement holds for any finite group of order r with  $2 \le r < n$ . The class equation for G associated to the conjugacy action of G on itself is given by

(7.3.15) 
$$|G| = |Z(G)| + \sum_{i=1}^{r} [G : C_G(a_i)],$$

where  $\{a_1,\ldots,a_r\}$  is the subset of G consisting of exactly one element from each G-orbits of that does not intersect Z(G). Since  $a\in Z(G)$  if and only if  $C_G(a)=G$ , we see that  $|C_G(a_i)|< n$ , for all  $i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . If  $p\mid |C_G(a_i)|$ , for some  $i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ , then by induction hypothesis  $C_G(a_i)\subseteq G$  has an element of order p, and we are done. Suppose that  $p\nmid |C_G(a_i)|$ ,  $\forall i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . Since  $p\mid n=|G|$  and  $|G|=|C_G(a_i)|[G:C_G(a_i)]$ , we see that  $p\mid [G:C_G(a_i)]$ ,  $\forall i\in\{1,\ldots,r\}$ . Since Z(G) is a subgroup of G,  $|Z(G)|\geq 1$ . Then from class equation above, we see that p divides |Z(G)|. Since Z(G) is abelian, it contains an element of order p by Proposition 7.3.13. This completes the proof.

As an immediate corollary, we have the following result, known as the *converse of Lagrange's theorem for finite abelian groups*.

7.4. p-groups 71

**Corollary 7.3.16.** Let G be a finite abelian group of order n. Let m > 0 be an integer that divides n. Then G has a subgroup of order m.

*Proof.* The cases n=2 and m=1 are trivial. So we assume that m>1 and n>2, and we prove it by induction on n. Suppose that the statement holds for any finite abelian group of order r with  $2 \le r < n$ . Let G be an abelian group of order n. Since m>1, there is a prime number, say  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ , such that  $p \mid m$ . Then m=pk, for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then by Cauchy's theorem (Theorem 7.3.14) G has a subgroup, say H, of order p. Since G is abelian, that H is normal in G. Then the quotient group G/H exists and we have  $1 \le |G/H| = n/p < n$ . Since  $m \mid n$ , we have  $n=m\ell$ , for some  $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then

$$|G/H| = \frac{n}{p} = \frac{m\ell}{p} = \frac{pk\ell}{p} = k\ell.$$

Since G/H is abelian group with |G/H| < n and  $k \mid |G/H|$ , by induction hypothesis G/H has a subgroup, say S, of order k. Now S = K/H, for some subgroup K of G containing H by Exercise 5.5.3. Since  $|K| = |S| \cdot |H| = kp = m$ , that K is a required subgroup of G of order M. This completes the proof.

#### 7.4 p-groups

**Definition 7.4.1** (p-group). Let  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  be a prime number. A group G is said to be a p-group if every element of G has order equal to a power of p. A subgroup H of G is called a p-subgroup of G if H is a p-group.

**Example 7.4.2.**  $D_4$  and  $K_4$  are 2-groups.

**Example 7.4.3.** Given a prime number p > 0, let

$$\mathbb{Z}_{(p)} := \left\{ \frac{m}{p^n} \in \mathbb{Q} : m, n \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}.$$

Clearly  $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$  is a non-empty subset of  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Since given  $m/p^n, k/p^\ell \in \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ , we have

$$\frac{m}{p^n} - \frac{k}{p^\ell} = \frac{mp^\ell - np^n}{p^{n+\ell}} \in \mathbb{Z}_{(p)},$$

we conclude that  $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$  is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Note that  $\operatorname{ord}(m/p^n)$  is a power of p, and hence  $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$  is a p-group.

**Proposition 7.4.4.** A finite group G is a p-group if and only if  $|G| = p^n$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

*Proof.* If  $|G| = p^n$ , for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , then given  $a \in G$ ,  $\operatorname{ord}(a) \mid p^n$  by Lagrange's theorem (Theorem 4.2.2), and hence  $\operatorname{ord}(a) = p^r$ , for some  $r \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ , since p is a prime number.

Conversely suppose that G is a finite p-group. If  $|G| \neq p^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ , then there exists a prime number  $q \neq p$  such that  $q \mid |G|$ . Then by Cauchy's theorem G has an element of order q, which is not of the form  $p^n$ , for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . This contradicts our assumption that G is a p-group. This completes the proof.

**Lemma 7.4.5.** *Subgroup of a p-group is a p-group.* 

*Proof.* Follows from the definition.

**Lemma 7.4.6.** Let G be a group (not necessarily finite), and p > 0 a prime number. Then any p-subgroup of G is contained in a maximal p-subgroup of G.

*Proof.* Let P be a p-subgroup of G. Let  $\mathcal P$  be the set of all p-subgroups of G containing P. Given  $P,Q\in\mathcal P$  we define  $P\leq Q$  if  $P\subseteq Q$ . Clearly this is a partial order relation on  $\mathcal P$ . Given a chain  $(P_n)_{n\geq 0}$  of elements from  $\mathcal P$  with  $P=P_0\leq P_1\leq \cdots$ , the subset  $P:=\bigcup_{n\geq 0}P_n$  is a p-subgroup of G (verify!), and hence is an element of  $\mathcal P$ . Then by Zorne's lemma  $\mathcal P$  has a maximal element, say  $P_{\max}\in\mathcal P$ . This completes the proof.

**Proposition 7.4.7.** *Any finite non-trivial p-group have non-trivial center.* 

*Proof.* Let G be a p-group of order  $p^n$ , for some prime number p > 0 and positive integer n > 0. Then the class equation for the conjugacy action of G on itself gives

$$|G| = |Z(G)| + \sum_{a \in \mathcal{O} \setminus Z(G)} [G : C_G(a)],$$

where  $\mathcal{O}$  is a subset of G consisting of exactly one element from each G-orbits. Since  $C_G(a) = G$  if and only if  $a \in Z(G)$ , we see that  $[G:C_G(a)] > 1$  for all  $a \in \mathcal{O} \setminus Z(G)$ . Since  $|G| = p^n$ , it follows from Lagrange's theorem that p divides  $[G:C_G(a)]$ ,  $\forall a \in \mathcal{O} \setminus Z(G)$ . Then from the class equation above we see that p divides |Z(G)|. Since  $|Z(G)| \ge 1$ , it follows that  $Z(G) \ne \{e\}$ .  $\square$ 

**Corollary 7.4.8.** Let p > 0 be a prime number. Then every group of order  $p^2$  is abelian.

*Proof.* Let G be a group of order  $p^2$ . Then by Proposition 7.4.7 above,  $Z(G) \neq \{e\}$ . Then  $|Z(G)| \in \{p, p^2\}$  by Lagrange's theorem. If |Z(G)| = p, then the quotient group G/Z(G) has order p, and hence is cyclic by Corollary 4.2.6. Then G is abelian by Exercise 4.4.5, which is a contradiction. Therefore,  $|Z(G)| = p^2 = |G|$ , and hence G = Z(G). Therefore, G is abelian.  $\square$ 

**Lemma 7.4.9.** Let G be a group of order  $p^n$ , where p > 0 is a prime number and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let X be a non-empty finite set admitting a left G-action. Let

$$X_0 := \{ x \in X : ax = x, \ \forall \ a \in G \}$$

be the subset of X consisting of elements with singleton G-orbits. Then  $|X| \equiv |X_0| \pmod{p}$ . In particular, if  $p \nmid |X|$ , there exists  $x \in X$  with singleton G-orbit.

*Proof.* The class equation for the left *G*-action on *X* gives

$$|X| = |X_0| + \sum_{x \in \mathcal{O} \setminus X_0} [G : G_x],$$

where  $\mathcal{O}$  is the subset of X consisting of exactly one element from each G-orbits of X. Since  $[G:G_x]=|\operatorname{Orb}_G(x)|>1$ , for all  $x\in\mathcal{O}\setminus X_0$ , and  $|G|=p^n$ , we conclude that p divides  $[G:G_x]$ , for all  $x\in\mathcal{O}\setminus X_0$ . Then the result follows by reducing the class equation above modulo p. If  $p\nmid |X|$ , then  $|X_0|\neq 0$  (mod p), and hence the second part follows.

**Corollary 7.4.10.** Let G be a finite group having a subgroup H of order  $p^n$ , where p > 0 is a prime number and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then  $[G:H] \equiv_p [N_G(H):H]$ . In particular, if  $p \mid [G:H]$ , then  $N_G(H) \neq H$ .

Solution: Take  $X = \{aH : a \in G\}$  to be the set of all left cosets of H in G. Then H acts on X by

$$\sigma: H \times X \to X, \ (h, aH) \mapsto (ha)H.$$

Note that  $\sigma$  is a well-defined map and is a left H-action on X. Moreover the subset of X consisting of singleton H-orbits is given by

$$X_0 = \{aH \in X : \sigma(h, aH) = aH, \ \forall \ h \in H\}$$
  
=  $\{aH \in X : a^{-1}ha \in H, \forall \ h \in H\}$   
=  $\{aH \in X : a \in N_G(H)\},$ 

we have  $|X_0| = [N_G(H): H]$ . Since |X| = [G: H], the result follows from Lemma 7.4.9.

### 7.5 Simple Groups

**Definition 7.5.1.** A group is said to be *simple* if it has no non-trivial proper normal subgroup.

**Example 7.5.2.** Any group of prime order is simple (c.f. Lagrange's theorem).

**Lemma 7.5.3.** A finite abelian group G is simple if and only if |G| is a prime number.

*Proof.* If |G|=p, for some prime number, then its only subgroups are  $\{e\}$  and G, and hence G is simple in this case. To see the converse, note that if |G| is composite, then |G|=pk, for some prime number p and an integer k>1. Then by Cauchy's theorem (Theorem 7.3.14) G has an element, say  $a\in G$ , of order p. Since G is abelian, the cyclic subgroup  $H:=\langle a\rangle$  of G is normal in G. Since G is not simple. G

**Exercise 7.5.4.** Let G be a finite group of order pq, where p and q are primes (not necessarily distinct). Show that G is not simple.

Solution: If p=q, then  $|G|=p^2$ , and so G is abelian by Corollary 7.4.8. Then G is not simple by Lemma 7.5.3. If  $p\neq q$ , without loss of generality we assume that p>q. Then by Cauchy's theorem G has a subgroup, say H, of order p. To show G is not simple, it suffices to show that H is normal. If possible suppose that there exists  $a\in G$  such that  $aHa^{-1}\neq H$ . Since both H and  $K_a:=aHa^{-1}$  are subgroups of G of order p, their intersection  $H\cap K_a$  is a subgroup (see Lemma 1.2.18) of order 1 or p by Lagrange's theorem (Theorem 4.2.2). Since  $H\neq K_a$  by assumption,  $|H\cap K_a|=1$ . Then the subset  $HK_a\subseteq G$  has cardinality

$$|HK_a| = \frac{|H| \cdot |K_a|}{|H \cap K_a|} = p^2 > pq = |G|,$$

which is a contradiction. Therefore,  $aHa^{-1} = H$ ,  $\forall a \in G$ , and hence H is normal in G.

**Exercise 7.5.5.** Let G be an abelian group having finite subgroups H and K of orders m and n, respectively. Show that G has a subgroup of order  $d := \operatorname{lcm}(m, n)$ .

Solution. Since G is abelian, both H and K are normal in G, and hence HK is a subgroup of G of order at most  $|H| \cdot |K| = mn$ . Since H and K are subgroups of HK, by Lagrange's theorem both m and n divides |HK|, and hence  $d := \operatorname{lcm}(m,n)$  divides |HK|. Since G is abelian, so is its subgroup HK. Then by Corollary 7.3.16 HK has a subgroup, say V of order d. Since V is also a subgroup of G, we are done.

**Exercise 7.5.6.** Let G be a non-abelian group of order  $p^3$ , where p is a prime number. Show that |Z(G)| = p.

*Solution:* Since G has order  $p^3$ , it has non-trivial center. Since G is non-abelian, so  $Z(G) \neq G$ . Then by Lagrange's theorem Z(G) has order p or  $p^2$ . If  $|Z(G)| = p^2$ , then G/Z(G) has order

p, and hence is a cyclic group. Then G is abelian by Exercise 4.4.5, which is a contradiction. Therefore, |Z(G)| = p.

**Exercise 7.5.7.** Let G be a finite abelian group. Let  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  be such that  $n \mid |G|$ . Show that the number of solutions of the equation  $x^n = e$  in G is a multiple of n.

Solution: The set of all solutions of  $x^n = e$  in G is given by

$$H := \{a \in G : a^n = e\}.$$

Since  $e^n=e$ , we see that  $H\neq\emptyset$ . Let  $a,b\in H$  be given. Since G is abelian, we have  $(a^{-1}b)^n=(a^n)^{-1}b^n=e^{-1}e=e$ , and so  $a^{-1}b\in H$ . Therefore, H is a subgroup of G. Since G is a finite abelian group and  $n\mid |G|$ , by Corollary 7.3.16 G has a subgroup, say K of order n. Then by Corollary 4.2.4 we have  $a^n=e, \ \forall \ a\in K$ , and hence  $K\subseteq H$ . Since |K|=n, by Lagrange's theorem we have  $n\mid |H|$ .

**Exercise 7.5.8.** Let G be a group of order  $p^n$ , where p > 0 is a prime number and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let H be a subgroup of G of order  $p^{n-1}$ . Show that H is normal in G.

Solution: Follows from Corollary 7.2.13.

**Exercise 7.5.9.** Show that  $N := \{e, (1\ 2)(3\ 4), (1\ 3)(2\ 4), (1\ 4)(2\ 3)\} \subset A_4$  is the unique subgroup of order 4 in  $A_4$ , and hence is normal in  $A_4$ . Conclude that  $A_4$  is not simple.

Next we show that  $A_n$  is simple, for all  $n \ge 5$ . We begin with some useful observations.

**Lemma 7.5.10.** Fix an integer  $n \ge 5$ , and let H be a normal subgroup of  $A_n$ . If H contains a 3-cycle, then  $H = A_n$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that H contains a 3-cycle, say  $\sigma=(a\ b\ c)\in H$ . Since  $A_n$  is generated by 3-cycles, it suffices to show that any 3-cycle is contained in H. Let  $\tau=(u\ v\ w)$  be any 3-cycle. Let  $\pi\in S_n$  be such that

$$\pi(a) = u$$
,  $\pi(b) = v$  and  $\pi(c) = w$ .

Then by Proposition 2.2.8 we have

$$\pi \sigma \pi^{-1} = (\pi(a) \ \pi(b) \ \pi(c)) = (u \ v \ w) = \tau.$$

Since *H* is a normal subgroup of  $A_n$ , it follows that  $\tau \in H$  whenever  $\pi \in A_n$ .

If  $\pi$  is odd, then we replace  $\pi$  with  $\pi\delta$ , where  $\delta=(d\ f)\in S_n$  for some  $d,f\in I_n\setminus\{a,b,c\}$  with  $d\neq f$ , and we can always do this because of our assumption  $n\geq 5$ . Since the 2-cycle  $\delta=\delta^{-1}$  is disjoint from  $\sigma$ , they commutes, and so  $(\pi\delta)\sigma(\pi\delta)^{-1}=\pi\sigma\pi^{-1}=\tau$ , as required. This completes the proof.

**Corollary 7.5.11.** Fix an integer  $n \ge 5$ , and let H be a normal subgroup of  $A_n$ . If H contains a product of two disjoint transpositions, then  $H = A_n$ .

*Proof.* Let  $(a\ b)$  and  $(c\ d)$  be two disjoint transpositions in  $S_n$  such that  $(a\ b)\circ (c\ d)\in H$ . To show that  $H=A_n$ , in view of Lemma 7.5.10, it suffices to show that H contains a 3-cycle. Since  $n\geq 5$ , we can choose an element  $f\in I_n\setminus\{a,b,c,d\}$ . Then the 3-cycle  $\pi:=(c\ d\ f)\in A_n$ . Since H is normal in  $A_n$ , we have  $\pi\circ (a\ b)\circ (c\ d)\circ \pi^{-1}\in H$ . But

$$\pi \circ (a \ b) \circ (c \ d) \circ \pi^{-1} = (c \ d \ f) \circ (a \ b) \circ (c \ d) \circ (c \ f \ d)$$
$$= (a \ b) \circ (d \ f).$$

Since *H* is a group containing  $(a \ b) \circ (c \ d)$  and  $(a \ b) \circ (d \ f)$ , we have

$$\pi = (c \ d \ f) = (a \ b) \circ (c \ d) \circ (a \ b) \circ (d \ f) \in H$$

as required. This completes the proof.

**Theorem 7.5.12.** *The alternating group*  $A_n$  *is simple, for all*  $n \ge 5$ .

*Proof.* Let H be a non-trivial normal subgroup of  $A_n$ . To show  $A_n$  is simple, thanks to Lemma 7.5.10, it suffices to show that H contains a 3-cycle.

Let  $\sigma \in H \setminus \{e\}$  be a permutation that moves the smallest number of elements, say r, of  $I_n := \{1, \ldots, n\}$ . If r = 2, then  $\sigma$  must be a transposition, which is not possible since then  $\sigma$  would be odd while  $H \subseteq A_n$ . Therefore,  $r \ge 3$ . If we can show that r = 3, then  $\sigma$  must be a 3-cycle and we are done.

Suppose on the contrary that r > 3. Write  $\sigma$  as a product of finite number of disjoint cycles, say  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_k$ , where  $\sigma_j$  is a cycle in  $S_n$ , for all  $j \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ .

**Step 1:** Suppose that  $\sigma_j$  is a transposition, for all  $j \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ . Then  $k \geq 2$ , for otherwise  $\sigma = \sigma_1$  would be odd, a contradiction. Let  $\sigma_1 = (a \ b)$  and  $\sigma_2 = (c \ d)$  in  $S_n$ . Since  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  are disjoint cycles and  $n \geq 5$ , there exists an element  $f \in I_n \setminus \{a, b, c, d\}$ . Let  $\tau := (c \ d \ f) \in S_n$ . Since  $\tau$  is even,  $\tau \in A_n$ . Since  $\sigma \in H$  and H is normal in  $A_n$ , we have  $\tau \sigma \tau^{-1} \in H$ . Since H is a group,

$$\sigma' := [\sigma^{-1}, \tau] = \sigma^{-1} \tau \sigma \tau^{-1} \in H.$$

Since  $\sigma$  permutes a and b, we see that  $\sigma'(a) = a$  and  $\sigma'(b) = b$ . If  $u \in I_n \setminus \{a, b, c, d, f\}$  is such that  $\sigma(u) = u$ , then  $\sigma'(u) = (\sigma^{-1}\tau\sigma\tau^{-1})(u) = u$ . Since  $\sigma'(f) = c$ , we have  $\sigma' \neq e$ . Therefore,  $\sigma' \in H \setminus \{e\}$  moves fewer elements of  $I_n$  than  $\sigma$ , which is a contradiction. Therefore, at least one  $\sigma_i$  must be a cycle of length  $\geq 3$ . Since disjoint cycles commutes, we may assume that  $\sigma_1 = (a \ b \ c \ \cdots)$  is a cycle of length  $\geq 3$ .

**Step 2:** If r = 4, then either  $\sigma$  is a product of two disjoint transpositions or is a 4-cycle. The first possibility is ruled out by step 1 and the second possibility is ruled out since a 4-cycle is odd and  $\sigma \in H \subseteq A_n$ . Therefore,  $r \ge 5$ .

**Step 3:** Since  $n \geq 5$ , we can choose  $d, f \in I_n \setminus \{a, b, c\}$  with  $d \neq f$ . Let  $\tau = (c \ d \ f) \in A_n$ . As before, H being a normal subgroup of  $A_n$  containing  $\sigma$ , we have  $\sigma' := \sigma^{-1}\tau\sigma\tau^{-1} \in H$ . Since  $\sigma'(b) \neq b$ , we have  $\sigma' \neq e$ . Given any  $u \in I_n \setminus \{a, b, c, d, f\}$ , if  $\sigma(u) = u$ , then  $\sigma'(u) = (\sigma^{-1}\tau\sigma\tau^{-1})(u) = u$ . Moreover  $\sigma(a) \neq a$  while  $\sigma'(a) = a$ . Therefore,  $\sigma' \in H \setminus \{e\}$  moves fewer elements of  $I_n$  than  $\sigma$ , which is a contradiction. Therefore, we must have r = 3, and hence  $\sigma$  must be a 3-cycle. Hence the result follows.

# **Chapter 8**

# Miscellaneous Exercises

Let G be a group.

- Q1. Given a subset  $A \subseteq G$ , we define  $N_G(A) := \{a \in G : a^{-1}Aa = A\}$ . Show that
  - (i)  $N_G(A)$  is a subgroup of G.
  - (ii) If *H* is a subgroup of *G*, show that  $H \leq N_G(H)$ .
  - (iii) If H is a subgroup of G, show that  $N_G(H)$  is the largest subgroup of G in which H is normal.
  - (iv) Show by an example that A need not be a subset of  $N_G(A)$ .
- Q2. Given a subset A of G, let  $C_G(A) := \{a \in G : aba^{-1} = b, \forall b \in A\}$ .
  - (i) Show that  $C_G(A)$  is a subgroup of G.
  - (ii) If H is a subgroup of G, show that  $H \leq C_G(H)$  if and only if H is abelian.
- Q3. If  $\mathcal{N}$  is a family of normal subgroups of G, show that  $\bigcap_{N \in \mathcal{N}} N$  is normal in G.
- Q4. If N is a normal subgroup of G, show that  $H \cap N$  is normal in H, for any subgroup H of G
- Q5. Let N be a finite subgroup of G. Suppose that  $N = \langle S \rangle$  and  $G = \langle T \rangle$ , for some subsets S and T of G. Show that N is normal in G if and only if  $tSt^{-1} \subseteq N$ , for all  $t \in T$ .
- Q6. Find all normal subgroups of the dihedral group  $D_8 = \langle r, s : \operatorname{ord}(r) = 4, \operatorname{ord}(s) = 2, sr = r^{-1}s \rangle$ , and identify the associated quotient groups.
- Q7. Fix an integer  $n \ge 3$ , and let  $D_{2n} = \langle r, s : \operatorname{ord}(r) = n, \operatorname{ord}(s) = 2, sr = r^{-1}s \rangle$  be the dihedral group of degree n and order 2n.
  - (a) Show that

$$Z(D_{2n}) = \begin{cases} \{e\}, & \text{if } n \text{ is odd, and} \\ \{e, r^k\}, & \text{if } n = 2k \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

- (b) If  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  divides n, show that  $\langle r^k \rangle$  is a normal subgroup of  $D_{2n}$ , and the associated quotient group  $D_{2n}/\langle r^k \rangle$  is isomorphic to  $D_{2k}$ .
- Q8. Let G and H be groups.
  - (i) Show that  $\{(a, e_H) : a \in G\}$  is a normal subgroup of  $G \times H$  and the associated quotient group is isomorphic to H.
  - (ii) If G is abelian, show that the diagonal  $\Delta_G := \{(a,a) : a \in G\}$  of G is a normal subgroup of  $G \times G$ , and the associated quotient group isomorphic to G.
  - (iii) Show that the diagonal subgroup  $\Delta_{S_3} \subseteq S_3 \times S_3$  is not normal in  $S_3 \times S_3$ .

- Q9. Let *H* and *K* be subgroups of *G* with  $H \leq K$ . Show that [G:H] = [G:K][K:H].
- Q10. Let G be a finite group. Let H and N be subgroups of G with N normal in G. If gcd(|H|, [G:N]) = 1, show that H is a subgroup of N.
- Q11. Let N be a normal subgroup of a finite group G. If gcd(|N|, [G:N]) = 1, show that N is the unique subgroup of order |N| in G.
- Q12. Let H be a normal subgroup of G. Given any subgroup K of G, show that  $H \cap K$  is normal in HK.
- Q13. Show that  $\mathbb{Q}$  has no proper subgroup of finite index. Deduce that  $\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z}$  has no proper subgroup of finite index.
- Q14. Let H and K be subgroups of G with  $[G:H]=m<\infty$  and  $[G:K]=n<\infty$ . Show that  $\operatorname{lcm}(m,n)\leq [G:H\cap K]\leq mn$ . Deduce that  $[G:H\cap K]=[G:H][G:K]$  whenever  $\gcd(m,n)=1$ .
- Q15. Show that  $S_4$  cannot have normal subgroups of orders 8 and 3.
- Q16. Find the last two digits of  $3^{3^{100}}$ .
- Q17. Let *H* and *K* be subgroups of *G*. If  $H \subseteq N_G(K)$ , then show that
  - (i) HK is a subgroup of G,
  - (ii) K is normal in HK,
  - (iii)  $H \cap K$  is normal in H, and
  - (iv)  $H/(H \cap K) \cong HK/K$ .
- Q18. If H is a normal subgroup of G with [G:H]=p, a prime number, show that for any subgroup K of G, either
  - (i) *K* is a subgroup of *H*, or
  - (ii) G = HK and  $[K : H \cap K] = p$ .
- Q19. Let H and K be normal subgroups of G such that G = HK. Show that  $G/(H \cap K) \cong (G/H) \times (G/K)$ .
- Q20. Let G be a finite group of order  $p^rm$ , where p>0 is a prime number,  $r,m\in\mathbb{N}$  and  $\gcd(p,m)=1$ . Let P be a subgroup of order  $p^r$ . Let N be a normal subgroup of G of order  $p^sn$ , where  $\gcd(p,n)=1$ . Show that  $|P\cap N|=p^s$  and  $|PN/N|=p^{r-s}$ . Conclude that intersection of a Sylow p-subgroup of G with a normal subgroup N of G is a Sylow p-subgroup of N.
- Q21. A subgroup H of a finite group G is said to be a *Hall subgroup of* G if its index in G is relatively prime to its order; i.e., if gcd([G:H], |H|) = 1.
  - If H is a Hall subgroup of G and N is a normal subgroup of G, show that  $H \cap N$  is a Hall subgroup of N and HN/N is a Hall subgroup of G/N.
- Q22. A non-trivial abelian group G is said to be *divisible* if for each  $a \in G$  and non-zero integer  $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ , there exists an element  $b \in G$  such that  $b^n = a$ ; i.e., each element of G has a n-th root in G, for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ . Prove the following.
  - (i) Show that  $(\mathbb{Q}, +)$  is a divisible group.
  - (ii) Show that any non-trivial divisible group is infinite.
  - (iii) Show by an example that subgroup of a divisible group need not be divisible.
  - (iv) If G and H are non-trivial abelian groups, show that  $G \times H$  is divisible if and only if both G and H are divisible.

- (v) Show that quotient of a divisible group by a proper subgroup is divisible.
- Q23. Find all generators and subgroups of  $\mathbb{Z}_{48}$ .
- Q24. Let G be a group. Given an element  $a \in G$ , show that there is a unique group homomorphism  $f: \mathbb{Z} \to G$  such that f(1) = a.
- Q25. Let G be a group. Let  $a \in G$  be such that  $a^n = e$ , for some integer  $n \ge 0$ , show that there is a unique group homomorphism  $\varphi : \mathbb{Z}_n \to G$  such that  $\varphi([1]) = a$ .
- Q26. Fix an integer  $n \ge 2$ . Given an integer k, let  $f_k : \mathbb{Z}_n \to \mathbb{Z}_n$  be the map defined by  $f_k(x) = x^k$ ,  $\forall x \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ .
  - (i) Show that  $f_k$  is a well-defined map.
  - (ii) Show that  $f_k \in \operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_n)$  if and only if  $\gcd(n, k) = 1$ .
  - (iii) Show that  $f_k = f_\ell$  if and only if  $\ell \equiv k \pmod{n}$ .
  - (iv) Show that every group automorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is of the form  $f_k$ , for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ .
  - (v) Show that  $f_k \circ f_\ell = f_{k\ell}, \ \forall \ k, \ell \in \mathbb{Z}$ .
  - (vi) Deduce that the map  $f: \mathbb{Z}_n^{\times} \to \operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_n)$  defined by  $f(k) = f_k, \ \forall \ k \in \mathbb{Z}_n^{\times}$ , is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}_n^{\times} := U_n$  onto the automorphism group  $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_n)$ .
  - (vii) Conclude that  $\operatorname{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_n)$  is an abelian group of order  $\phi(n)$ , where  $\phi$  denotes the Euler phi function.
- Q27. Fix an integer  $n \ge 3$ . Show that the multiplicative group  $G := (\mathbb{Z}/2^n\mathbb{Z})^{\times}$  has two distinct subgroups of order 2. Conclude that G is not cyclic.
- Q28. Let G be a finite group of order n. Let  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $\gcd(n,k) = 1$ . Use Lagrange's theorem and Cauchy's theorem to show that the map  $f: G \to G$  defined by  $f(a) = a^k$ ,  $\forall \ a \in G$ , is surjective.
- Q29. Let  $m, n \geq 2$  be two integers. Find all group homomorphism  $f: \mathbb{Z}_m \to \mathbb{Z}_n$ .
- Q30. Let G be a group. Show that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of all group homomorphisms from  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  into G with the set of all solutions of the equations  $x^m = e_G$  in G.
- Q31. Find the number of group homomorphisms from  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  into  $\mathbb{Z}_m \times \mathbb{Z}_k$ .
- Q32. Find the number of all group homomorphisms from  $S_3$  into  $\mathbb{Z}_n \times \mathbb{Z}_m$ . (*Hint:* Use abelianization of  $S_3$ .)
- Q33. Let G be a group and H an abelian subgroup of G. Show that the subgroup  $\langle H, Z(G) \rangle$  is abelian. Give an example of a group G and an abelian subgroup H of G such that the subgroup  $\langle H, C_G(H) \rangle$  is not abelian, where  $C_G(H) = \{a \in G : a^{-1}ha = h, \forall h \in H\}$  is the *centralizer of* H *in* G.
- Q34. Show that the subgroup generated by any two distinct elements of order 2 in  $S_3$  is  $S_3$ .
- Q35. Show that any finitely generated subgroup of  $(\mathbb{Q},+)$  is cyclic. Conclude that  $\mathbb{Q}$  is not finitely generated.
- Q36. Show that the subgroup of  $(\mathbb{Q}^*, \cdot)$  generated by the subset  $\{1/p \in \mathbb{Q}^+ : p \text{ is a prime number}\}$  is  $\mathbb{Q}^+$ , the multiplicative group of positive rational numbers.
- Q37. Show that any group of order 4 is isomorphic to either  $\mathbb{Z}_4$  or  $K_4$ .
- Q38. Show that any group of order 6 is isomorphic to either  $\mathbb{Z}_6$  or  $S_3$ .

Q39. Let p > 0 be a prime number, and let

$$G = \{z \in \mathbb{C}^* : z^{p^n} = 1, \text{ for some } n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}\}.$$

Prove the following.

- (i) G is a subgroup of  $\mathbb{C}^*$ .
- (ii) The map  $F_p: G \to G$  given by  $z \mapsto z^p$ , is a surjective group homomorphism.
- (iii) Find  $Ker(F_p)$ .
- (iv) Show that G is isomorphic to a *proper quotient group* (i.e., quotient by a non-trivial normal subgroup) of itself.
- Q40. Let G be the additive group  $(\mathbb{R}, +)$ . Show that G is isomorphic to the product group  $G \times G$ . (*Hint*: Note that both  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$  are  $\mathbb{Q}$ -vector spaces). Show that this fails for  $G = (\mathbb{Z}, +)$ .
- Q41. Let G be a finite group and let S(G) be the permutation group on G. Let  $\pi: G \to S(G)$  be the *left regular representation of* G (i.e.,  $\pi$  is the group homomorphism defined by sending  $a \in G$  to the permutation  $\sigma_a \in S(G)$  that sends  $b \in G$  to  $ab \in G$ ).
  - (i) If  $a \in G$  with  $\operatorname{ord}(a) = n$  and |G| = mn, show that  $\pi(a)$  is a product of m number of n-cycles.
  - (ii) Deduce that  $\pi(a)$  is an odd permutation if and only if  $\mathrm{ord}(a)$  is even and  $|G|/\mathrm{ord}(a)$  is odd.
  - (iii) If  $\pi(G)$  contains an odd permutation, show that G has a subgroup of index 2.
- Q42. If G is a finite group of order 2n, where n is odd, show that G has a subgroup of index 2. (*Hint:* Use Cauchy's theorem and the previous exercise).
- Q43. Let G be finite group of order n, where n is not a prime number. If G has a subgroup of order r, for each positive integer r that divides n, show that G is not a simple group.
- Q44. Let G be a group. A subgroup H of G is said to be a *characteristic subgroup of* G if  $f(H) \subseteq H$ , for all  $f \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$ . Prove the following.
  - (i) Characteristic subgroups are normal.
  - (ii) If H is the unique subgroup of a given finite order in G, then H is a characteristic subgroup of G.
  - (iii) If K is a characteristic subgroup of H and H is normal in G, show that K is normal in G.
- Q45. Compute the conjugacy class and the stabilizer of  $\sigma := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & 7 & 1 & 6 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \in S_7$ .
- Q46. Let H be a subgroup of G with finite index [G:H]=n. Show that there is a normal subgroup K of G with  $K\subseteq H$  and  $[G:K]\leq n!$ .
- Q47. Show that every non-abelian group of order 6 has a non-normal subgroup of order 2. (*Hint:* Produce an injective group homomorphism  $G \to S_3$ ). Use this to show that, upto isomorphism, there are only two groups of order 6, namely  $S_3$  and  $\mathbb{Z}_6$ .
- Q48. Given any two groups G and H, we denote by Hom(G,H) the set of all group homomorphisms from G into H.
  - (i) Find the number of elements of the set  $\text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}_n)$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .
  - (ii) Let G be an abelian groups of order n. Let  $r \in \mathbb{N}$ . Are the sets  $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}^{\oplus r}, \mathbb{Z}_n)$  and  $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}^{\oplus r}, G)$  have the same cardinality?
  - (iii) Find the number of group homomorphisms from  $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$  to  $S_3$ . How many of them are surjective?

Q49. Given any three groups G, H and K, show that there is a natural bijective map

$$\operatorname{Hom}(G,H)\times\operatorname{Hom}(G,K)\longrightarrow\operatorname{Hom}(G,H\times K).$$

- Q50. Let G be a finite group of order pq, where p,q are prime numbers with  $p \le q$  and  $p \nmid (q-1)$ . Show that G is abelian. If p < q and  $p \nmid (q-1)$ , what can you say about G?
- Q51. Let p>0 be a prime number. Let P be a non-trivial p-subgroup of  $S_p$ . Show that  $|N_{S_p}(P)|=p(p-1)$ .